(54) Title: INDOLYL NEUROPEPTIDE Y RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

(57) Abstract

This invention provides a series of substituted indoles which are useful in treating or preventing a condition associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y. This invention also provides the novel substituted indoles as well as pharmaceutical formulations which comprise as an active ingredient one or more of these substituted indoles.
### FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AM</td>
<td>Armenia</td>
<td>GB</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>MW</td>
<td>Malawi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>GE</td>
<td>Georgia</td>
<td>MX</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>GN</td>
<td>Guinea</td>
<td>NE</td>
<td>Niger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BB</td>
<td>Barbados</td>
<td>GR</td>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>NL</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BE</td>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>HU</td>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>Norway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>Burkina Faso</td>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>NZ</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BG</td>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>Poland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BJ</td>
<td>Benin</td>
<td>JP</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>PT</td>
<td>Portugal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>KE</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>RO</td>
<td>Romania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BY</td>
<td>Belarus</td>
<td>KG</td>
<td>Kyrgyzstan</td>
<td>RU</td>
<td>Russian Federation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>KP</td>
<td>Democratic People's Republic of Korea</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td>Sudan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>Central African Republic</td>
<td>KR</td>
<td>Republic of Korea</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>Sweden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CG</td>
<td>Congo</td>
<td>KZ</td>
<td>Kazakhstan</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>LI</td>
<td>Liechtenstein</td>
<td>SI</td>
<td>Slovenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CI</td>
<td>Côte d'Ivoire</td>
<td>LK</td>
<td>Sri Lanka</td>
<td>SK</td>
<td>Slovakia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CM</td>
<td>Cameroon</td>
<td>LR</td>
<td>Liberia</td>
<td>SN</td>
<td>Senegal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>LT</td>
<td>Lithuania</td>
<td>SZ</td>
<td>Swaziland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>Czechoslovakia</td>
<td>LU</td>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>TD</td>
<td>Chad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CZ</td>
<td>Czech Republic</td>
<td>LV</td>
<td>Latvia</td>
<td>TG</td>
<td>Togo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>MC</td>
<td>Monaco</td>
<td>TJ</td>
<td>Tajikistan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DK</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>MD</td>
<td>Republic of Moldova</td>
<td>TT</td>
<td>Trinidad and Tobago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>Estonia</td>
<td>MG</td>
<td>Madagascar</td>
<td>UA</td>
<td>Ukraine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>ML</td>
<td>Mali</td>
<td>UG</td>
<td>Uganda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FI</td>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>MN</td>
<td>Mongolia</td>
<td>US</td>
<td>United States of America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>MR</td>
<td>Mauritania</td>
<td>UZ</td>
<td>Uzbekistan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GA</td>
<td>Gabon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VN</td>
<td>Viet Nam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Title

INDOLYL NEUROPEPTIDE Y RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS

Priority Claim

This application claims the benefit of United States Provisional Applications 60/003,150, filed September 1, 1995, and 60/021,638, filed July 12, 1996 and United Kingdom Patent Application 9523999.2, filed November 23, 1995.

Background of the Invention

Neuropeptide Y is a peptide present in the central and peripheral nervous systems. The peptide co-exists with noradrenaline in many neurons and acts as a neurotransmitter per se or synergistically together with noradrenaline. Neuropeptide Y-containing fibers are numerous around arteries in the heart, but are also found around the arteries in the respiratory tract, the gastrointestinal tract, and the genitourinary tract. Neuropeptide Y is also present in the cerebrum with effects on blood pressure, feeding, and the release of different hormones. Alterations in central concentrations of neuropeptide Y have been implicated in the etiology of psychiatric disorders.

Neuropeptide Y was discovered, isolated and sequenced in 1982 from porcine brain as part of a general screening protocol to discover carboxy-terminal amidated peptides and was named neuropeptide Y due to its isolation from neural tissue and the presence of tyrosine as both the amino and carboxy terminal amino acid.

Neuropeptide Y is a member of the pancreatic family of peptides and shares significant sequence homology with pancreatic polypeptide and peptide YY.

Neuropeptide Y and the other members of its family of peptides all feature a tertiary structure consisting of an N-terminal polyproline helix and an amphiphilic α-helix, connected with a β-turn, creating a hairpin-like loop, which is sometimes referred to as the
pancreatic polypeptide (PP) fold. The helices are kept together by hydrophobic interactions. The amidated C-terminal end projects away from the hairpin loop.

Subsequent to its discovery neuropeptide Y was identified as being the most abundant peptide in the central nervous system with widespread distribution including the cortex, brainstem, hippocampus, hypothalamus, amygdala, and thalamus as well as being present in the peripheral nervous system in sympathetic neurons and adrenal chromaffin cells.

Neuropeptide Y seems to fulfill the main criteria for a role as a neurotransmitter, as it is stored in synaptic granules, is released upon electrical nerve stimulation, and acts at specific receptors. It is clear that neuropeptide Y is an important messenger in its own right, probably in the brain, where neuropeptide Y potently inhibits the activity of adenylate cyclase and induces an increase in the intracellular levels of calcium. Central injection of neuropeptide Y results in blood pressure changes, increased feeding, increased fat storage, elevated blood sugar and insulin, decreased locomotor activity, reduced body temperature, and catalepsy.

Neuropeptide Y (as well as its chemical relatives) acts upon membrane receptors that are dependent on guanyl-nucleotide binding proteins, known as G protein-coupled receptors. G proteins are a family of membrane proteins that become activated only after binding guanosine triphosphate. Activated G proteins in turn activate an amplifier enzyme on the inner face of a membrane; the enzyme then converts precursor molecules into second messengers.

Neuropeptide Y appears to interact with a family of closely related receptors. These receptors are generally classified into several subtypes based upon the ability of different tissues and receptors to bind different fragments of neuropeptide Y and other members of the PP family of peptides. The Y1 receptor subtype appears to be the major vascular neuropeptide Y receptor. The Y2 receptor subtypes can also occur postjunctionally on vascular smooth muscle. The as-yet-unisolated Y3 receptor subtype appears to be neuropeptide Y-specific, not binding peptide YY. This receptor is likely to be present in the adrenal tissues, medulla, heart, and brain stem, among other areas.

In view of the wide number of clinical maladies associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y, the development of neuropeptide Y receptor antagonists will serve to control these clinical conditions. The earliest such receptor antagonists, such as Patent Cooperation Treaty Patent Publication WO 91/08223, published June 13, 1991, and Patent Cooperation Treaty Patent Publication WO 94/00486, published January 6, 1994, were peptide derivatives. These antagonists are of limited pharmaceutical utility because of their metabolic instability.

This invention provides a class of potent non-peptide neuropeptide Y receptor antagonists. By virtue of their non-peptide nature, the compounds of the present invention do not suffer from the shortcomings, in terms of metabolic instability, of known peptide-based neuropeptide Y receptor antagonists.

**Summary of the Invention**

This invention encompasses methods for the treatment or prevention of a disorder associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y, which method comprises administering to a mammal in need of said treatment an effective amount of a compound of Formula I

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{I} \\
&\text{D-} \text{-(CH\textsubscript{2})\texttextsubscript{s}} - \text{C} - X^1 - Y^1 - \text{R}^2 \\
&(\text{CH\textsubscript{2}})\textsubscript{q} \\
&A - A^1 - \text{-(CH\textsubscript{2}})\textsubscript{p} - \text{R} \\
&R^1 - R^2 - Y^1 - X^1
\end{align*}
\]

wherein:
R\textsuperscript{b} is hydrogen, C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkyl, C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkoxy, C\textsubscript{2}-C\textsubscript{6} alkanoyl, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, or halo;

R\textsuperscript{1} is hydrogen, C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkyl, or -(CH\textsubscript{2})\textsubscript{v}-R\textsuperscript{1a};

where v is 1 to 12, and R\textsuperscript{1a} is phenyl, naphthyl, hexamethyleneiminyln, piperazinyln, heptamethyleneiminyln, imidazolinyln, piperidinyln, tryptolinyln, pyrrolidinyln, quinuclidinyln, or morpholinyln, any one of which phenyl, naphthyl, hexamethyleneiminyln, piperazinyln, heptamethyleneiminyln, imidazolinyln, piperidinyln, tryptolinyln, pyrrolidinyln, quinuclidinyln, or morpholinyln groups may be substituted with one or more moieties selected from the groups consisting of C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkyl, halo, trifluoromethyl, benzyl, phenyl, di(C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkyl)amino, C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkylamino, C\textsubscript{2}-C\textsubscript{6} alkanoyl, C\textsubscript{2}-C\textsubscript{6} alkanoyloxy, and C\textsubscript{3}-C\textsubscript{8} cycloalkyl,

said said phenyl, benzyl, or C\textsubscript{3}-C\textsubscript{8} cycloalkyl, being optionally substituted with one, two, or three moieties independently selected from the group consisting of C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkyl, halo, or C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkoxy,

or R\textsuperscript{1a} may be substituted with -(CH\textsubscript{2})\textsubscript{w}-R\textsuperscript{1b}, where w is 1 to 12 and R\textsuperscript{1b} is piperidinyln, pyrimidinyln, pyrrolidinyln, C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkoxy, C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkylthio, di[di(C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkyl)amino(C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkylamino)]amino, di(C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkyl)amino(C\textsubscript{1}-C\textsubscript{6} alkylamino)amino, phenyl, C\textsubscript{3}-C\textsubscript{8} cycloalkyl, pyrrolidinyln, and acetamido,

said phenyl, or C\textsubscript{3}-C\textsubscript{8} cycloalkyl, being optionally substituted with one, two, or three
moieties independently selected from the group consisting of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halo, or C₁-C₆ alkoxy;

A is a bond, -(CH₂)ₘ or -C(O)-;

A¹ is a bond, -NRᵃ⁻, -O-, -(CH₂)ₘ⁻, or -S(O)ₙ⁻;

q is 0 to 6;

p is 0 to 6;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

m is 0 to 6;

s is 0 to 6;

Rᵃ is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, or C₂-C₆ alkanoyl;

D is a bond, C₂-C₄ alkenylenyl, or -C(X)(Y)-,

where one of X and Y is hydroxy and the other is hydrogen, or both X and Y are hydrogen, or X and Y combine to form =O, or =NORᶜ;

Rᶜ is hydrogen, benzyl, acetyl, benzoyl, or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

one of X¹ and Y¹ is hydroxy and the other is hydrogen, or both X¹ and Y¹ are hydrogen, or X¹ and Y¹ combine to form =O, or =NORᵈ;

Rᵈ is hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl;
- 6 -

R² is hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, phenoxy, or a group of the formula

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{R}^4 \\
\text{N} \\
\text{R}^5
\end{array}
\]

wherein R⁴ and R⁵ are independently hydrogen, C₁₋₆ alkyl, phenyl, or phenyl(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)-, or R² is a heterocyclic ring selected from the group consisting of hexamethyleneiminyln, piperazinyl, heptamethyleneiminyln, imidazolinyl, piperidinyl, 2-tryptolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl;

any one of which hexamethyleneiminyln, piperazinyl, heptamethyleneiminyln, imidazolinyl, piperidinyl, 2-tryptolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl groups may be substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of C₁₋₆ alkyl, halo, trifluoromethyl, benzyl, phenyl, di(C₁₋₆ alkyl)amino, di(C₁₋₆ alkyl)amino(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)-, C₁₋₆ alkylamino(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)-, C₂₋₆ alkanoyl, carboxamido, 2-aminoacetetyl, C₂₋₆ alkanoyl peroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkylamino, C₃₋₈ cycloalkyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrimidinyl, phenyl(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)-, phenoxy(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)-, piperidinyl(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)-, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkylthio, di(di(C₁₋₆ alkyl)amino(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)]amino, di(C₁₋₆ alkyl)amino(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)]amino, and acetamido,

any one of which benzyl, phenyl, piperidinyl, C₃₋₈ cycloalkyl, phenyl(C₁₋₆ alkylenyl)-,
phenoxy(C1-C6 alkylenyl)-, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl(C1-C6 alkylenyl)-, pyrrolidinyl(C1-C6 alkylenyl)-, pyrimidyl(C1-C6 alkylenyl)-, or pyrimidyl group may be substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of C1-C6 alkyl, halo, trifluoromethyl, acetamido, C2-C6 alkanoyl, C2-C7 alkanoyloxy, and C1-C6 alkoxy, or the nitrogen on said piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl(C1-C6 alkylenyl)-, pyrrolidinyl(C1-C6 alkylenyl)-, pyrimidyl(C1-C6 alkylenyl)-, or pyrimidyl may be substituted with an amino-protecting group,

or R² is a group of the formula

```
    R⁴⁺a
    /\n   / \n  R⁺⁶a
 /    \n R⁻⁵a
```

where R⁴⁺a, R⁻⁵a, and R⁺⁶a are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl, or C₁-C₆ alkoxy,

or R⁴⁺a is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl, or C₁-C₆ alkoxy and R⁻⁵a and R⁺⁶a combine to form, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, hexamethyleneiminyl, or heptamethyleneiminyl,

or R⁴⁺a is oxygen, and R⁻⁵a and R⁺⁶a combine to form, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, hexamethyleneiminyl, or heptamethyleneiminyl;

R is phenyl, naphthyl, dihydronaphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, pyrazinyl, allyl,
thiazolyl, furyl, pyrimidyl, pyridinyl, quinolinyl,
isooquinolinyl, oxazolyl, pyridazinyl, imidazolyl, triazolyl,
tetrazolyl, hexamethylenemiminzl, heptamethylenemiminzl,
piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl,

any one of which phenyl, naphthyl, dihydronaphthyl,
tetrahydronaphthyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, pyrazinyl,
thiazolyl, furyl, pyrimidyl, pyridinyl, quinolinyl,
isooquinolinyl, oxazolyl, pyridazinyl, imidazolyl,
triazolyl, tetrazolyl, hexamethylenemiminzl,
heptamethylenemiminzl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl,
quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl groups may be
substituted with one or more moieties selected from
the group consisting of C₁-C₁₂ alkyl, C₂-C₁₀ alkenyl,
C₂-C₁₀ alkenyl, halo, trifluoromethyl, carboxamido,
cyano, benzyl, phenyl, di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino, C₂-C₆
alkanoyl, C₂-C₆ alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₆ alkylamino,
oxazolyl, dihydrooxazolyl, piperidinyl(C₁-C₁₂ alkoxy)-,
piperidinyl(C₁-C₁₂ alkoxy)(C₁-C₆ alkylenyl)-,
piperidinyl(C₁-C₁₂ alkylenyl)-, phenyl(C₁-C₁₂ alkoxy)-,
phenyl(C₂-C₁₂ alkylenyl)-, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl,
piperidinyl, pyrimidyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ alkylthio,
a group of the formula RₓRᵧN-G-L-(C₀-C₆ alkylenyl)-,
and acetamido,

where Rₓ and Rᵧ are independently hydrogen,
C₁-C₆ alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, piperidinyl,
pyrrolidinyl, hexamethylenemiminzl,
heptamethylenemiminzl, morpholinyl,
piperazinyl, or C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl,

or where RₓRᵧN is a ring selected from the
group consisting of piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl,
hexamethylenemiminzl, heptamethylenemiminzl,
azetidinyl, which may be attached to G at any
appropriate place on the ring,
G is C₁-C₁₂ alkylenyl, C₂-C₁₂ alkenylenyl, or C₂-C₁₂ alkynylenyl, and

L is a bond, -O-, -S-, -S(O)-, -S(O)₂-, or -NH₂-

with the proviso that when, A¹ is -NR³⁻, -O-, or -S(O)ₙ⁻, and A is -CH₂⁻, R¹ is not hydrogen;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

This invention also encompasses the novel compounds of Formula I as well as pharmaceutical formulations comprising a compound of Formula I in combination with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, diluents, or excipients therefor.

**Detailed Description and Preferred Embodiments**

The current invention concerns the discovery that a select group of substituted indoles, those of Formula I, are useful as neuropeptide Y receptor antagonists.

"C₁-C₆ alkoxy" represents a straight or branched alkyl chain having from one to six carbon atoms attached to an oxygen atom. Typical C₁-C₆ alkoxy groups include methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isoproxy, butoxy, t-butoxy, pentoxy and the like. The term "C₁-C₆ alkoxy" includes within its definition the terms "C₁-C₄ alkoxy" and "C₁-C₃ alkoxy".

As used herein, the term "C₁-C₁₂ alkyl" refers to straight or branched, monovalent, saturated aliphatic chains of 1 to 12 carbon atoms and includes, but is not limited to, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, t-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, and hexyl. The term "C₁-C₁₂ alkyl" includes within its definition the terms "C₁-C₆ alkyl" and "C₁-C₄ alkyl".

"C₂-C₇ alkanoyloxy" represents a straight or branched alkyl chain having from one to six carbon atoms attached to a carbonyl moiety joined through an oxygen atom. Typical C₂-C₇ alkanoyloxy groups
include acetoxy, propanoyloxy, isopropanoyloxy, butanoyloxy, t-butanoyloxy, pentanoyloxy, hexanoyloxy, 3-methylpentanoyloxy and the like.

“C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl” represents a saturated hydrocarbon ring structure containing from three to eight carbon atoms. Typical C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl groups include cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, and the like.

“Halo” represents chloro, fluoro, bromo or iodo.

“C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio” represents a straight or branched alkyl chain having from one to ten carbon atoms attached to a sulfur atom. Typical C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio groups include methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio and the like. The term “C₁-C₁₀ alkylthio” includes within its definition the term “C₁-C₆ alkylthio” and “C₁-C₃ alkylthio”.

“C₁-C₁₂ alkylenyl” refers to a straight or branched, divalent, saturated aliphatic chains of 1 to 12 carbon atoms and includes, but is not limited to, methylenyl, ethylenyl, propylenyl, isopropylenyl, butylenyl, isobutylenyl, t-butylenyl, pentylenyl, isopentylencyl, hexylenyl, octylenyl, 3-methyloctylenyl, decylenyl. The term “C₁-C₆ alkylenyl” is encompassed within the term “C₁-C₁₂ alkylenyl”. The term “C₀ alkylenyl” or any term incorporating this designation, refers to a bond, for example “C₀-C₆ alkylenyl” refers to a bond or C₁-C₆ alkylenyl, as such is defined herein.

“C₁-C₁₀ alkylamino” represents a group of the formula -NH(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)

wherein a chain having from one to ten carbon atoms is attached to an amino group. Typical C₁-C₄ alkylamino groups include methy lamino, ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino, sec-butylamino and the like.

The term “C₂-C₁₂ alkenyl” as used herein represents a straight or branched, monovalent, unsaturated aliphatic chain having from two to twelve carbon atoms. Typical C₂-C₁₂ alkenyl groups include ethenyl (also known as vinyl), 1-methylethenyl, 1-methyl-1-propenyl, 1-butenyl, 1-hexenyl, 2-methyl-2-propenyl, 2,4-hexadienyl, 1-propenyl, 2-propenyl, 2-butenyl, 2-pentenyl, and the like.
The term “C₂-C₁₂ alkynyl” as used herein represents a straight or branched, monovalent, unsaturated aliphatic chain having from two to ten carbon atoms with at least one triple bond. Typical C₂-C₁₂ alkynyl groups include ethynyl, 1-propynyl, 1-butynyl, 1-hexynyl, 2-propynyl, 2-butynyl, 2-pentynyl, and the like.

The term “C₂-C₁₂ alkenylenyl” as used herein represents a straight or branched, divalent, unsaturated aliphatic chain having from two to twelve carbon atoms. Typical C₂-C₁₂ alkenylenyl groups include -CH=CH-, -CH₂-CH=CH-, -CH₂-C(CH₃)=CH-CH₂CH₂-, and the like.

The term “C₂-C₁₂ alkylenylene” as used herein represents a straight or branched, divalent, unsaturated aliphatic chain having from two to ten carbon atoms with at least one triple bond. Typical C₂-C₁₂ alkylenylene groups include -C≡C-, -CH₂-C≡C-, -CH₂=C≡C-CH₂CH₂-, and the like.

“C₃-C₈ cycloalkenyl” represents a hydrocarbon ring structure containing from three to eight carbon atoms and having at least one double bond within that ring.

“C₁-C₆ alkoxy” represents a straight or branched alkyl chain having from one to six carbon atoms attached to an oxygen atom. Typical C₁-C₆ alkoxy groups include methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, t-butoxy, pentoxy and the like. The term “C₁-C₆ alkoxy” includes within its definition the term “C₁-C₃ alkoxy”.

“C₂-C₆ alkanoyl” represents a straight or branched alky chain having from one to five carbon atoms attached to a carbonyl moiety. Typical C₂-C₆ alkanoyl groups include ethanoyl, propanoyl, isopropanoyl, butanoyl, t-butanoyl, pentanoyl, hexanoyl, 3-methylpentanoyl and the like.

“C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbonyl” represents a straight or branched alkoxy chain having from one to six carbon atoms attached to a carbonyl moiety. Typical C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbonyl groups include methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, t-butoxycarbonyl and the like.

The term “amino-protecting group” as used in the specification refers to substituents of the amino group commonly employed to block or protect the amino functionality while reacting other
functional groups on the compound. Examples of such amino-protecting groups include formyl, trityl, phthalimido, trichloroacetyl, chloroacetyl, bromoacetyl, iodoacetyl, and urethane-type blocking groups such as benzyloxy carbonyl, 4-phenylbenzyloxy carbonyl, 2-methylbenzyloxy carbonyl, 4-methoxybenzyloxy carbonyl, 4-fluorobenzyloxy carbonyl, 4-chlorobenzyloxy carbonyl, 3-chlorobenzyloxy carbonyl, 2-chlorobenzyloxy carbonyl, 2,4-dichlorobenzyloxy carbonyl, 4-bromobenzyloxy carbonyl, 3-bromobenzyloxy carbonyl, 4-nitrobenzyloxy carbonyl, 4-cyanobenzyloxy carbonyl, t-butoxy carbonyl, 1,1-diphenyleth-1-yloxy carbonyl, 1,1-diphenylprop-1-yloxy carbonyl, 2-phenylprop-2-yloxy carbonyl, 2-(p-toluyl)-prop-2-yloxy carbonyl, cyclopentanyloxy carbonyl, 1-methylcyclopentanyloxy carbonyl, cyclohexanyloxy carbonyl, 1-methylcyclohexanyloxy carbonyl, 2-methylcyclohexanyloxy carbonyl, 2-(4-toluylsulfonyl)-ethoxy carbonyl, 2-(methylsulfonyl)ethoxy carbonyl, 2-(triphenylphosphino)-ethoxy carbonyl, fluorenylethoxy carbonyl ("FMOC"), 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy carbonyl, allyloxy carbonyl, 1-(trimethylsilylmethyl)prop-1-enyloxy carbonyl, 5-benzisoxalylmethoxy carbonyl, 4-acetoxybenzyloxy carbonyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxy carbonyl, 2-ethynyl-2-propoxy carbonyl, cyclopropylmethoxy carbonyl, 4-(decyloxy)benzyloxy carbonyl, isobornylmethoxy carbonyl, 1-piperidylmethoxy carbonyl and the like; benzoylmethylsulfonyl group, 2-nitrophenylsulfonyl, diphenylphosphine oxide and like amino-protecting groups. The species of amino-protecting group employed is usually not critical so long as the derivatized amino group is stable to the condition of subsequent reactions on other positions of the intermediate molecule and can be selectively removed at the appropriate point without disrupting the remainder of the molecule including any other amino-protecting groups. Preferred amino-protecting groups are trityl, t-butoxy carbonyl (t-BoC, Boc, or t-Boc), allyloxy carbonyl and benzyloxy carbonyl. Further examples of groups referred to by the above terms are described by E. Haslam, "Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry", (J.G.W. McOmie, ed., 1973), at Chapter 2; and T.W. Greene and P.G.M. Wuts, PROTECTIVE GROUPS IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS, (1991), at Chapter 7.
The term “carboxy-protecting group” as used in the specification refers to substituents of the carboxy group commonly employed to block or protect the carboxy functionality while reacting other functional groups on the compound. Examples of such carboxy-protecting groups include methyl, p-nitrobenzyl, p-methylbenzyl, p-methoxybenzyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl, 2,4-dimethoxybenzyl, 2,4,6-trimethoxybenzyl, 2,4,6-trimethylbenzyl, pentamethylbenzyl, 3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl, benzhydryl, 4,4′-dimethoxybenzhydryl, 2,2′,4,4′-tetramethoxybenzhydryl, t-butyl, t-amyl, trityl, 4-methoxytrityl, 4,4′-dimethoxytrityl, 4,4′,4″-trimethoxytrityl, 2-phenylprop-2-yl, trimethylsilyl, t-butyldimethylsilyl, phenacyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethyl, 2-(di(n-butyl)methyl)silyl)ethyl, p-toluenesulfonylthethyl, 4-nitrobenzylsulfonylethyl, allyl, cinnamyl, 1-(trimethylsilylmethyl)prop-1-en-3-yl and like moieties. Preferred carboxy-protecting groups are allyl, benzyl and t-butyl. Further examples of these groups are found in E. Haslam, supra, at Chapter 5, and T.W. Greene, et al., supra, at Chapter 5.

The term “hydroxy-protecting groups” as used herein refers to substituents of the hydroxy group commonly employed to block or protect the hydroxy functionality while reacting other functional groups on the compound. Examples of such hydroxy-protecting groups include methoxymethyl, benzoyloxymethyl, methoxyethoxymethyl, 2-(trimethylsilylethoxy)methyl, methylthiomethyl, 2,2-dichloro-1,1-difluoroethyl, tetrahydropyranyl, phenacyl, cyclopropylmethyl, allyl, C1-C6 alkyl, 2,6-dimethylbenzyl, o-nitrobenzyl, 4-picoly, dimethylsilyl, t-butyldimethylsilyl, levulinate, pivaloate, benzoate, dimethylsulfonate, dimethylphosphinyl, isobutyrate, adamantoate and tetrahydropyranyl. Further examples of these groups may be found in T. W. Greene and P.G.M. Wuts, PROTECTIVE GROUPS IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS, (1991) at Chapter 3.

The term “leaving group” as used herein refers to a group of atoms that is displaced from a carbon atom by the attack of a nucleophile in a nucleophilic substitution reaction. The term “leaving group” as used in this document encompasses, but is not limited to, activating groups.
The term “activating group” as used herein refers a leaving group which, when taken with the carbonyl (-C=O) group to which it is attached, is more likely to take part in an acylation reaction than would be the case if the group were not present, as in the free acid. Such activating groups are well-known to those skilled in the art and may be, for example, succinimidoxy, phthalimidoxy, benzotriazolyloxy, benzenesulfonyloxy, methanesulfonyloxy, toluenesulfonyloxy, azido, or -O-CO-(C₄-C₇ alkyl).

The compounds of the present invention are derivatives of indole which are named and numbered according to the RING INDEX, The American Chemical Society, as follows.

The compounds of the present invention may have one or more asymmetric centers. As a consequence of these chiral centers, those compounds of the present invention occur as racemates, mixtures of enantiomers and as individual enantiomers, as well as diastereomers and mixtures of diastereomers. All asymmetric forms, individual isomers and combinations thereof, are within the scope of the present invention.

The terms “R” and “S” are used herein as commonly used in organic chemistry to denote specific configuration of a chiral center. The term “R” (rectus) refers to that configuration of a chiral center with a clockwise relationship of group priorities (highest to second lowest) when viewed along the bond toward the lowest priority group. The term “S” (sinister) refers to that configuration of a chiral center with a counterclockwise relationship of group priorities (highest to second lowest) when viewed along the bond toward the lowest priority group.

The priority of groups is based upon their atomic number (in order of decreasing atomic number). A partial list of priorities and a discussion of stereochemistry is contained in NOMENCLATURE OF ORGANIC

In addition to the (R)-(S) system, the older D-L system may also be used in this document to denote absolute configuration, especially with reference to amino acids. In this system a Fischer projection formula is oriented so that the number 1 carbon of the main chain is at the top. The prefix "D" is used to represent the absolute configuration of the isomer in which the functional (determining) group is on the right side of the carbon atom at the chiral center and "L", that of the isomer in which it is on the left.

In order to preferentially prepare one optical isomer over its enantiomer, the skilled practitioner can proceed by one of two routes. The practitioner may first prepare the mixture of enantiomers and then separate the two enantiomers. A commonly employed method for the resolution of the racemic mixture (or mixture of enantiomers) into the individual enantiomers is to first convert the enantiomers to diastereomers by way of forming a salt with an optically active salt or base. These diastereomers can then be separated using differential solubility, fractional crystallization, chromatography, or like methods.


In addition to the schemes described above, the practitioner of this invention may also choose an enantiospecific protocol for the preparation of the compounds of Formula I. Such a protocol employs a synthetic reaction design which maintains the chiral center present in the starting material in a desired orientation. These reaction schemes usually produce compounds in which greater than 95 percent of the title product is the desired enantiomer.

As noted supra, this invention includes the pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds defined by Formula I. A compound of this invention can possess a sufficiently acidic, a sufficiently basic, or both functional groups, and accordingly react with any of a number of organic and inorganic bases, and inorganic and organic acids, to form a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.
The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" as used herein, refers to salts of the compounds of the above formula which are substantially non-toxic to living organisms. Typical pharmaceutically acceptable salts include those salts prepared by reaction of the compounds of the present invention with a pharmaceutically acceptable mineral or organic acid or an organic or inorganic base. Such salts are known as acid addition and base addition salts.

Acids commonly employed to form acid addition salts are inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydroiodic acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, and the like, and organic acids such as p-toluenesulfonic acid, methanesulfonic acid, oxalic acid, p-bromophenylsulfonic acid, carbonic acid, succinic acid, citric acid, benzoic acid, acetic acid, and the like. Examples of such pharmaceutically acceptable salts are the sulfate, pyrosulfate, bisulfate, sulfite, bisulfite, phosphate, monohydrogenphosphate, dihydrogenphosphate, metaphosphate, pyrophosphate, bromide, iodide, acetate, propionate, decanoate, caprylate, acrylate, formate, hydrochloride, dihydrochloride, isobutyrate, caproate, heptanoate, propiolate, oxalate, malonate, succinate, suberate, sebacate, fumarate, maleate, butyne-1,4-dioate, hexyne-1,6-dioate, benzoate, chlorobenzoate, methylbenzoate, hydroxybenzoate, methoxybenzoate, phthalate, xylenesulfonate, phenylacetate, phenylpropionate, phenylbutyrate, citrate, lactate, γ-hydroxybutyrate, glycolate, tartrate, methanesulfonate, propanesulfonate, naphthalene-1-sulfonate, naphthalene-2-sulfonate, mandelate and the like. Preferred pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts are those formed with mineral acids such as hydrochloric acid and hydrobromic acid, and those formed with organic acids such as maleic acid and methanesulfonic acid.

Salts of amine groups may also comprise quaternary ammonium salts in which the amino nitrogen carries a suitable organic group such as an alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, or aralkyl moiety.

Base addition salts include those derived from inorganic bases, such as ammonium or alkali or alkaline earth metal hydroxides, carbonates, bicarbonates, and the like. Such bases useful in preparing the salts of this invention thus include sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, ammonium hydroxide, potassium carbonate, sodium
carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, calcium hydroxide, calcium carbonate, and the like. The potassium and sodium salt forms are particularly preferred.

It should be recognized that the particular counterion forming a part of any salt of this invention is usually not of a critical nature, so long as the salt as a whole is pharmacologically acceptable and as long as the counterion does not contribute undesired qualities to the salt as a whole.

This invention further encompasses the pharmaceutically acceptable solvates of the compounds of Formulas I. Many of the Formula I compounds can combine with solvents such as water, methanol, ethanol and acetonitrile to form pharmaceutically acceptable solvates such as the corresponding hydrate, methanolate, ethanolate and acetonitrate.

This invention also encompasses the pharmaceutically acceptable prodrugs of the compounds of Formula I. A prodrug is a drug which has been chemically modified and may be biologically inactive at its site of action, but which may be degraded or modified by one or more enzymatic or other in vivo processes to the parent bioactive form. This prodrug should have a different pharmacokinetic profile than the parent, enabling easier absorption across the mucosal epithelium, better salt formation or solubility, or improved systemic stability (an increase in plasma half-life, for example).

Typically, such chemical modifications include:

1) ester or amide derivatives which may be cleaved by esterases or lipases;
2) peptides which may be recognized by specific or nonspecific proteases; or
3) derivatives that accumulate at a site of action through membrane selection of a prodrug form or a modified prodrug form; or any combination of 1 to 3, supra. Conventional procedures for the selection and preparation of suitable prodrug derivatives are described, for example, in H, Bundgaard, Design of Prodrugs, (1985).

The preferred compounds of the present invention are those compounds of Formula I in which:
- 18 -

a) \( R^b \) is hydrogen, chloro, fluoro, methyl, ethyl, hydroxy, or acetyl;

b) \( R^1 \) is methyl, ethyl, or \( R^{1a} \) is phenyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, hexamethylenimethyl, piperazinyl, and \( v \) is 1 to 6;

c) \( A^1 \) is a bond, -NH-, -N(CH\(_3\))-, -S-, or -O-;

d) \( A \) is -CH\(_2\)- or -CH\(_2\)CH\(_2\)-;

e) \( q \) is 0, 1, or 2;

f) \( p \) is 0, 1, or 2;

g) \( s \) is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

h) \( D \) is a bond, -C(O)-, -CH(OH)-, or -CH\(_2\)-;

i) \( R^2 \) is a group of the formula -NR\(_4\)R\(_5\) or -N+R\(_4\)aR\(_5\)aR\(_6\)a;

j) \( R^4 \) and \( R^5 \) are independently hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, benzyl, or combine to form, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, a piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, or hexamethylenimethyl group;

k) \( R^{4a}, R^{5a}, R^{6a} \) are independently hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, or \( R^{5a} \) and \( R^{6a} \) combine to form, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, a piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, or hexamethylenimethyl group; and

l) \( R \) is phenyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, hexamethylenimethyl, heptamethylenimethyl, naphthyl, thiazolyl, furyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl,
morpholinyl, cyclohexyl, cyclopentyl, pyrazinyl, triazolyl, or quinuclidinyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

The preferred methods of the present invention are those methods employing compounds of Formula I in which

a) \( R^b \) is hydrogen, chloro, fluoro, methyl, ethyl, hydroxy, or acetyl;

b) \( R^1 \) is methyl, ethyl, or \( R^{1a} \) is phenyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, hexamethyleneiminyln, piperazinyl, and \( v \) is 1 to 6;

c) \( A^1 \) is a bond, -NH-, -N(CH_3)-, -S-, or -O-;

d) \( A \) is -CH_2- or -CH_2CH_2-;

e) \( q \) is 0, 1, or 2;

f) \( p \) is 0, 1, or 2;

g) \( s \) is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

h) \( D \) is a bond, -C(O)-, -CH(OH)-, or -CH_2-;

i) \( R^2 \) is a group of the formula -NR^4R^5 or -N+R^4aR^5aR^6a;

j) \( R^4 \) and \( R^5 \) are independently hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, benzyl, or combine to form, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, a piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, or hexamethyleneiminyln group;

k) \( R^{4a}, R^{5a}, R^{6a} \) are independently hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, or \( R^{5a} \) and \( R^{6a} \) combine to form, together with
the nitrogen to which they are attached, a piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, or hexamethyleneiminyl group; and

5 l) \( R \) is phenyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, hexamethyleneiminyl, heptamethyleneiminyl, naphthyl, thiazolyl, furyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, morpholinyl, cyclohexyl, cyclopentyl, pyrazinyl, triazolyl, or quinuclidinyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

Especially preferred compounds of the present invention are those compounds of Formula I in which:

15 a) \( R^b \) is hydrogen, fluoro, or methyl;

b) \( R^1 \) is methyl, or \( R^{1a} \) is piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, or hexamethyleneiminyl, and \( v \) is 1, 2, or 3;

20 c) \( A^1 \) is a bond, -NH-, -S-, or -O-;

d) \( A \) is -CH\(_2\)- or -CH\(_2\)CH\(_2\)-;

25 e) \( q \) is 0 or 1;

f) \( p \) is 0 or 1;

g) \( s \) is 0 or 1;

30 h) \( D \) is a bond, or -C(O)-;

i) \( R^2 \) is a group of the formula -NR\(_4\)R\(_5\);
j) \( R^4 \) and \( R^5 \) are independently methyl, or combine to form, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, a piperidinyl, piperazinyl, or pyrrolidinyl group;

k) \( R \) is optionally substituted phenyl, naphthyl, or cyclohexyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

Especially preferred methods and formulations of the present invention are those methods and formulations employing especially preferred compounds.

Particularly preferred compounds are those of Formula I in which:

a) \( R^b \) is hydrogen;

b) \( R^1 \) is methyl, piperidinyl(C\(_1\)-C\(_4\) alkylenyl)-, or pyrrolidinyl(C\(_1\)-C\(_4\) alkylenyl)-;

c) \( A^1 \) is a bond or -O-;

d) \( A \) is -CH\(_2\)-;

d) \( q \) is 0;

e) \( p \) is 0 or 1;

f) \( s \) is 0 or 1;

g) \( D \) is a bond, or -C(O)-;
h) $R^2$ is a piperidinyl, or pyrrolidinyl group, substituted with amino, di($C_1$-$C_6$ alkyl)amino, ($C_1$-$C_6$ alkyl)amino, piperidinyl, or pyrrolidinyl, or $R^2$ is a piperazinyl group substituted with phenyl, cyclohexyl, or benzyl; and

j) $R$ is phenyl, substituted with one to three groups selected from $C_1$-$C_6$ alkyl, trifluoromethyl, and halo; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

Especially preferred methods and formulations of the present invention are those methods and formulations employing especially preferred compounds.

A most preferred class of compounds of the present invention are those compounds of Formula I of the Formula

where:

$D^1$ is -C(O)-, or -CH$_2$-;

$R^1$ is methyl, piperidin-3-yl-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-, piperidin-3-yl-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-, piperidin-2-yl-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-, piperidin-2-yl-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-, pyrrolidin-3-yl-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-, pyrrolidin-3-yl-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-, piperidin-4-yl-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-, or piperidin-4-yl-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-CH$_2$-;
R² is piperidinyl, or pyrrolidinyl group, substituted with amino, di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino, piperidinyl, or pyrrolidinyl, or R² is a piperazinyl group substituted with phenyl or cyclohexyl;

R* is chloro or bromo; and

R** hydrogen or chloro;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

Methods and formulations employing any of this class of most preferred compounds are also most preferred.

The compounds of Formula I may be prepared by a number of methods known to those skilled in the art. One protocol for preparing those compounds of Formula I in which R¹ is methyl, is depicted in Scheme I, infra.
Scheme I

\[
\text{reduction} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{alkylation or}} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{arylation}}
\]

\[
\text{alkylation}
\]

\[
\text{alkylation}
\]

\[
\text{reduction} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{alkylation or}} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{arylation}}
\]

\[
\text{alkylation}
\]

\[
\text{alkylation}
\]
As would be appreciated by those skilled in the art, there are numerous ways of performing each of the steps depicted supra. Typical such methods are described infra in the general teachings and the examples.

**Reduction**

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{COOH} \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{}} \begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{array}
\]

Many of the compounds of Formula I are prepared through the reduction of 1-methyl-2-indolecarboxylic acid to the corresponding 2-hydroxymethyl-1-methylindole. This reduction may be prepared by several methods known in the art including catalytic hydrogenation. A most preferred method for this reduction is by using a reducing agent such as sodium borohydride, lithium borohydride, diisobutylaluminumhydride hydride, lithium triethylborohydride, borane-methyl sulfide complex in refluxing tetrahydrofuran, and triethoxysilane. Another means of reducing the carboxylic acid is by means of sodium in ethanol, a method known as the Bouveault-Blanc procedure. A most preferred reducing agent employed in this procedure is lithium aluminum hydride.

**Alkylation or Arylation**

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{ArOH}} \begin{array}{c}
\text{OAr} \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{array}
\]

The coupling of the aryl group to the above alcohol may be performed using standard techniques. For those compounds of
Formula I in which A is -O-, p is 0, and R is substituted phenyl, for example, a most preferred method involves a phenolic coupling using a Mitsunobu reagent. O. Mitsunobu, et al., Bulletin of the Chemical Society of Japan, 44:3427 (1971); O. Mitsunobu, et al., Journal of the American Chemical Society, 94:679 (1972). In this reaction triphenylphosphine, in combination with diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD), converts alcohols in situ to the corresponding alkoxyphosphonium salts, which are useful alkylating agents.

Although this coupling can be accomplished using various concentrations of the reactants and reagents, it is best to use 1 to 2 equivalents of the indole methyl alcohol, triphenylphosphine, and DEAD per each equivalent of the substituted phenol (ArOH) used.

This reaction also is best carried out in the presence of an inert solvent such as, for example, toluene, benzene, or, preferably tetrahydrofuran. The reaction is performed at temperatures from about 0° C to about 40° C, preferably at ambient temperature, until the desired compound is prepared. Typically, the reaction takes about 18 hours when run at ambient temperature, but the progress of the reaction can be monitored via standard chromatographic techniques.

An alternative method of arylating the alcohol involves nucleophilic aromatic substitution of an aryl fluoride with a preformed alkoxide. This reaction is performed by first adding a base to the alcohol, followed by the addition of the aryl halide. An especially preferred base is sodium hydride. Another preferred base is sodium hexamethyldisilazide. The reaction is generally performed in a polar aprotic solvent, for example, acetonitrile, N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylphenylacetamide, dimethylsulfoxide, or hexamethylphosphoric triamide.
Alkylation

Alkylation of the 1,2-disubstituted indole may be done by a variety of methods known to those skilled in the art. A preferred method of alkylating this substituted indole is by way of a Mannich reaction. [For reviews of this reaction, see, Tramontini, Synthesis, 703-775 (1973); House, MODERN SYNTHETIC REACTIONS, (2d ed., 1972) at pages 654-660.]

In this reaction formaldehyde (or sometimes another aldehyde) is condensed with HNR^4R^5, in the form of its salt, and a compound containing an active hydrogen. Instead of ammonia, the reaction can be carried out with salts of primary (RNH_2) or secondary amines (R_2NH), or with amides (RCO NH_2), in which cases the product is substituted on the nitrogen with R, R_2, and RCO, respectively. This reaction is generally carried out in a lower alkyl alcohol, such as methanol or ethanol, or in an acid, such as acetic acid.

One process for preparing those compounds of Formula I in which A is an alkyl enyl group is by first oxidizing the alcohol to form the corresponding aldehyde.

This reaction is generally performed using an oxidizing agent such as pyridinium dichromate (PDC) or pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC) in a
solvent such as methylene chloride. The resulting aldehyde is then reacted with a substituted phosphonate in the presence of a base.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ArCH}_2\text{PO(OEt)}_2 & \rightarrow \text{ArCH}_2\text{PO(OEt)}_2 \\
\text{CH}_3 & \rightarrow \text{CH}_3
\end{align*}
\]

This Wittig-type reaction results in the formation of an aralkenyl group. A preferred base employed in this reaction is sodium hydride. This reaction generally results in a mixture of the (E) and (Z) stereoisomers. The double bond is then reduced using either a reducing agent as described supra or by means of catalytic hydrogenation using standard means. Preferred solvents for this reaction include dichloroethane.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \\
\text{Ar} & \rightarrow \text{Ar}
\end{align*}
\]

The resulting 1,2-disubstituted indole may then be substituted at the 3 position essentially as described above for the Mannich chemistry.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \\
\text{Ar} & \rightarrow \text{Ar}
\end{align*}
\]

Those compounds in which R¹ is a substituted alkylenyl group [(CH₂)ₙ-R¹] may be prepared as illustrated in Scheme II, infra.
Scheme II

a) 

b) 

c) 
in which Tr is a trityl group.
Scheme II (continued)

d)  

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{halogenation} & \\
\text{NTr} & \quad \text{NTr}
\end{align*}
\]

e)  

\[
\begin{align*}
1) \text{t-BuLi} & \\
2) \text{N-N-N} & \quad \text{N} \quad \text{OCH}_3 \\
\text{NTr} & \quad \text{NTr}
\end{align*}
\]

f)  

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{deprotection} & \\
\text{NH} & \quad \text{NTr}
\end{align*}
\]
For those compounds of Formula I in which L is -S-, the thio derivatives and intermediates of this invention may be transformed into the corresponding sulfoxide (-SO-) compounds upon treatment with a mild oxidizing agent, such as hydrogen peroxide in methanol, meta-chloroperbenzoic acid (MCPBA) in methylene chloride at 0°C, or an alkali metal periodate in aqueous alcohol. The corresponding sulfones (-SO₂-) are prepared from the thio or sulfoxide compounds on treatment with a strong oxidizing agent, such as hydrogen peroxide in acetic acid or m-chloroperbenzoic acid in methylene chloride at 20°C-30°C.

Those compounds of Formula I in which the benzo ring of the indole has been substituted may be prepared by a number of ways known to those skilled in the art. For example, those compounds of Formula I in which the 4-position of the indole ring has been substituted with methyl may be prepared as described in Scheme III, infra.

In step a), below, a Knoevenagel condensation reaction is performed, resulting (after the dehydration step of the reaction) in an olefin. This reaction is generally performed with an excess of the azide, although an equimolar mixture of the two reagents may be employed.

The olefin product of step a) is then cyclized to form an indole ring. The usual means of this cyclization is by heating the olefin. The progress of the cyclization may be followed by thin layer chromatography.
Scheme III

a) \[ \text{CH}_3\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{N}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{Et}} \text{addition} \xrightarrow{} \text{CH}_3\text{CH}==\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \]

b) \[ \text{CH}_3\text{CH}==\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{\text{cyclization}} \text{N}_3 \xrightarrow{} \text{CH}_3\text{N}==\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \]

c) \[ \text{CH}_3\text{N}==\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{\text{bromination}} \text{Br} \xrightarrow{} \text{CH}_3\text{N}==\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \]

d) \[ \text{CH}_3\text{N}==\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{I}} \text{alkylation} \xrightarrow{} \text{CH}_3\text{N}==\text{CO}_2\text{Et} \]
Scheme III (continued)

e) 
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{Br} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{CO}_2\text{Et} \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{align*}
\] 
\[\text{ene} \quad \text{XR} \]
\[\text{substitution}\] 
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{Et} & \quad \text{CH}_3 \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{align*}
\]

f) 
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{Et} & \quad \text{CH}_3 \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{align*}
\] 
\[1) \text{hydrogenation} \quad \text{2) reduction}\] 
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \quad \text{CH}_3 \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{align*}
\]

1) base 
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \quad \text{CH}_3 \\
\text{Cl} & \quad \text{Cl} & \quad \text{Cl} & \quad \text{F}
\end{align*}
\] 
\[2) \text{substitution}\] 
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{Cl} & \quad \text{Cl}
\end{align*}
\]
Scheme IV

1) a. n-BuLi, CO₂
   b. t-BuLi, CO₂
2) conc. H₂SO₄
   [MeOH]

NaH [DMF]

LAH
[THF]
Scheme IV (Continued)

1) NaH; [DMF]

2) HCO₂H, [CH₂Cl₂]
An alternative method of preparing those compounds of Formula I in which \( R^b \) is not hydrogen may be prepared as described in Scheme IV, infra.

The intermediates and other reagents necessary for the preparations of the compounds of the present invention, are commercially available, are known in the literature, or can be prepared by known methods. In addition, those of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that variations on the methods for preparing the claimed compounds as described above may be performed without detracting from the synthesis of these compounds. For example, other esters may be employed, as may protecting groups, precursors, the direct introduction of the carboxylic acid group onto the benzo ring of the indole (Kolbe-Schmitt reaction), etc. Moreover, certain \( R^b \) groups may be introduced directly onto the benzo ring. For example, a chloro group can be introduced by treating with iodobenzene, chlorine, and pyridine [Murakami, et al., Chem. Pharm. Bull., 19:1696 (1971)] or N-chlorosuccinimide in dimethylformamide [United States Patent 4,623,657, the entire contents of which are herein incorporated by reference]. In addition to those described supra, other transformations, intraconversions, and derivatizations are either described in the Examples, infra, or are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

The following Examples further illustrate the compounds of the present invention and the methods for their synthesis. The Examples are not intended to be limiting to the scope of the invention in any respect, and should not be so construed. All experiments were run under a positive pressure of dry nitrogen or argon. All solvents and reagents were purchased from commercial sources and used as received, unless otherwise indicated. Dry tetrahydrofuran (THF) was obtained by distillation from sodium or sodium benzophenone ketyl prior to use.

Proton nuclear magnetic resonance (\(^1\)H NMR) spectra were obtained on a GE QE-300 spectrometer at 300.15 MHz, a Bruker AM-500 spectrometer at 500 MHz, or a Bruker AC-200P spectrometer at 200 MHz, or a like model. (Unless designated otherwise, the term “NMR” as employed herein refers to proton nuclear magnetic resonance.) Free
atom bombardment mass spectroscopy (FAB) was performed on a VG ZAB-2SE instrument. Field desorption mass spectroscopy (FDMS) was performed using either a VG 70SE or a Varian MAT 731 instrument.

Optical rotations were measured with a Perkin-Elmer 241 polarimeter. Chromatographic separation on a Waters Prep 500 LC was generally carried out using a linear gradient of the solvents indicated in the text unless otherwise specified.

The reactions were generally monitored for completion using thin layer chromatography (TLC). Thin layer chromatography was performed using E. Merck Kieselgel 60 F_{254} plates, 5 cm x 10 cm, 0.25 mm thickness. Spots were detected using a combination of UV and chemical detection (plates dipped in a ceric ammonium molybdate solution [75 g of ammonium molybdate and 4 g of cerium (IV) sulfate in 500 ml of 10% aqueous sulfuric acid] and then heated on a hot plate).

Preparative centrifugal thin layer chromatography was performed on a Harrison Model 7924A Chromatotron using Analtech silica gel GF rotors.

Cation exchange chromatography was performed with Dowex\textsuperscript{®} 50X8-100 ion exchange resin. Anion exchange chromatography was performed with Bio-Rad AG\textsuperscript{®} 1-X8 anion-exchange resin (acetate form converted to hydroxide form). Flash chromatography was performed as described by Still, et al., *Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 43:2923 (1978).

Optical rotations are reported at the sodium-D-line (354 nm). Elemental analyses for carbon, hydrogen, and nitrogen were determined on a Control Equipment Corporation 440 Elemental Analyzer, or were performed by the Universidad Complutense Analytical Centre (Facultad de Farmacia, Madrid, Spain). Melting points were determined in open glass capillaries on a Thomas Hoover capillary melting point apparatus or a Büchi melting point apparatus, and are uncorrected.

The following methods provide illustrative protocols for preparing the compounds of Formula I as depicted in the Schemes supra. Throughout the Methods and Examples, infra, the terms "NMR", "IR", and "UV" indicate that the proton nuclear magnetic
resonance, infrared, and ultraviolet spectroscopy, respectively, were consistent with the desired title product.

**Preparation 1**

Preparation of (3'R) ethyl 2-(piperidin-3-yl)acetate

![Chemical Structure](image)

Ethyl-3-pyridylacetate (100g, 0.606 mol) was dissolved in ethanol (1.8 liters), treated with 5% rhodium on alumina (100 g) and hydrogenated at 60°C and 60 psi hydrogen gas overnight. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the solvent evaporated to give a brown liquid (101.4 g, 98%). The brown liquid was dissolved in ethyl acetate (600 ml) and treated with L-(+)-mandelic acid in warm ethyl acetate (600 ml). After cooling in the refrigerator for four hours, the solid was collected and the crystallization fluid reserved for processing to the other enantiomer, infra. The solid was again recrystallized from ethyl acetate (1.55-1.6 liters, overnight at ambient temperature) to give the desired title product as white needles. Yield: 81.6 grams, 41%. O.R. (EtOH) @589 nm = +44.9°, @365 nm = +173.73°. mp 118-119°C.

**Preparation 2**

Preparation of (3'S) ethyl 2-(piperidin-3-yl)acetate

![Chemical Structure](image)

The crystallization fluid from Preparation 1, *supra*, was evaporated to give a dark oil (100.3 g). This was dissolved in a cold
solution of potassium carbonate (52 g, 0.377 mol) in water (250 ml) and
extracted with ethyl acetate (5 x 150 ml). The extracts were combined
and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo
to give a dark liquid (40.25 g). The dark liquid was treated with a warm
solution of D-(-)-mandelic acid (36 g) in ethyl acetate (650 ml) and stirred
at ambient temperatures overnight. The crystals were recrystallized
twice more from ethyl acetate (1.2 liters and 1.1 liters, respectively) to
give the desired title product as white needles. Yield: 48.7 g, 24.9%.
O.R. (EtOH) @589 nm = -43.14°, @365 nm = -164.31°. mp 115.5-117°C.

Chiral Analytical Method

Cold aqueous potassium carbonate (0.15 g in 10 ml of water)
was treated with 0.3 g of the mandelic acid salt and the mixture was
extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 5 ml). The combined extracts were dried
over magnesium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The
residue was dissolved in diethyl ether (10 ml) and treated with S-(-)-α-
methylenzylisocyanate (0.12 ml). After 2.5 hours, the reaction was
treated with 1 N hydrochloric acid (2 ml). The ether was separated and
then washed sequentially with brine, a saturated aqueous sodium
bicarbonate solution, and brine. The organic fraction was dried over
magnesium sulfate and the solvents were removed by evaporation. The
residue was analyzed on a CHIRACEL OJ™ high performance liquid
chromatography column (4.6 x 250 mm), eluting with 5% ethanol in
hexanes at a flow rate of 2.5 ml/minute. The slower component comes
from the l-(-)-mandelic acid salt and the faster from the d-(-)-mandelic
acid salt. HPLC analysis of the final crystallization products of both
enantiomers show less than three percent of the opposite enantiomer.

Preparation 3

Preparation of (3'R) ethyl 2-[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]acetate
(3'R)-Ethyl 2-(piperidin-3-yl)acetate (10.9 g, 34 mmol) as prepared in Preparation 1 was dissolved in 50 ml of a 12% sodium carbonate in water solution and the resulting solution was extracted with chloroform. The extracts were dried and the solvents removed by evaporation. The residue was suspended in diethyl ether, filtered, and evaporated to give the free base (5.36 g). The liquid was dissolved in ether (50 ml) and treated dropwise with di-t-butyldicarbonate (7.9 g) in ether (10 ml). After stirring overnight, the solution was cooled in an ice water bath and treated dropwise with saturated aqueous citric acid (25 ml). The aqueous fraction was extracted with diethyl ether. The organic fractions were combined, washed with water, a saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, and then brine, and then dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to give the desired title product was a clear liquid. NMR was consistent with proposed title structure.

Preparation 4

Preparation of (3'S) ethyl 2-[[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]acetate

(3'S)-Ethyl 2-(piperidin-3-yl)acetate (48.6 g, 150 mmol), as prepared in Preparation 2, was treated with a solution of potassium carbonate (30 g, 0.217 mol) in water (220 ml) and the resulting solution was extracted with chloroform (3 x 100 ml). The extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue
was mixed with diethyl ether (200 ml) and filtered to remove some suspended solids. Evaporation of the ether gave a brownish liquid (25 g, Theory = 25.7 g). The residue was dissolved in diethyl ether (200 ml), cooled in an ice water bath, and a solution of di-\textit{t}-butyldicarbonate (31.8 g, 0.146 mol) in ether (25 ml) was added dropwise with stirring. Cooling was removed and reaction was stirred overnight. The solution was again cooled in ice water and a solution of saturated aqueous citric acid (100 ml) was added dropwise. The organics were washed with brine, a saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution, then brine, and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to give the desired title product as a clear liquid (38.6 g, >99%). NMR was consistent with desired title structure.

**Preparation 5**

Preparation of ethyl 3-[pyrid-3-yl]prop-2-enoate

![Chemical Structure](image)

A solution of ethylphosphinoacetate (98.6 g, 0.44 mol) in dry tetrahydrofuran (1200 ml) was treated with 60% sodium hydride (17.5 g, 0.44 mol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for two hours and was then cooled down to 0°C. To this mixture 3-pyridine carboxaldehyde (38.9 g, 0.36 mol) was added and the resulting reaction mixture was stirred for 1-2 hours while warming to room temperature. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

Water (1000 ml) was added to the reaction mixture. The organic fraction was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 1000 ml). The organic fractions were combined, washed with water (2 x 1000 ml), brine (1 x 1000 ml), and the dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield 62.5 grams (97%) of the desired title product.
Preparation 6

Preparation of (RS) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate

A solution of ethyl 3-[pyrid-3-yI]prop-2-enoate (60 g, 0.34 mol) in ethanol (600 ml) was treated with 5% rhodium on alumina powder (17.2 g). The mixture was placed under a hydrogen atmosphere (55 psi) for five hours at 60°C. The reaction was stopped by removing the hydrogen and the reacton mixture was filtered through a layer of CELITE™. The residue was washed with hot ethanol. The filtrate was concentrated and purified by flash chromatography to provide 39.6 grams (63%) of the desired title product. IR, NMR, and IR were consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation 7

Preparation of (3'S) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate mandelic acid salt

A solution of (RS) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate (52.0 g, 281 mmol) in hot ethyl acetate (300 ml) was added to the hot solution of R-(-) mandelic acid (42.7 g, 281 mmol). The resulting mixture was then filtered and the clear solution was left at room temperature overnight. The newly formed white crystals of the salt were filtered from the solution. These crystals were recrystallized twice by dissolution in hot
ethyl acetate (300 ml) and letting it cool down to room temperature each time. The final pure crystals were dried to yield 33.1 grams (70%). NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title product. The conformation about the chiral center was confirmed by X-ray crystallography.

**Preparation 8**

Preparation of (3'R) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate mandelic acid salt

![Chemical Structure](image)

The title compound was prepared essentially as described in Preparation 7, *supra*, except that S-(+) mandelic acid was employed instead of the R-(−) mandelic acid employed therein. NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title product.

**Preparation 9**

Preparation of (3'S) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate

![Chemical Structure](image)

A suspension of (3'S) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate mandelic acid salt (33.1 g, 98 mmol) in ethyl acetate (500 ml) was treated with a 30% aqueous solution of potassium carbonate until all the organic layer was clear. The mixture was poured into a separatory funnel and the organic fraction was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 300 ml). The combined organic fraction was washed with water (2 x 300 ml), then
brine (1 x 300 ml), and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield an oily product in nearly 100% yield. NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title product.

**Preparation 10**

Preparation of (3'R) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate

![Chemical structure](image)

The title compound was prepared essentially as described in Preparation 9, *supra*, except that (3'R) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate mandelic acid salt was employed instead of the (3'S) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate mandelic acid salt therein. NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title product.

**Preparation 11**

Preparation of (3'S) ethyl 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propionate

![Chemical structure](image)

A solution of (3'S) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate (12.5 g, 67.5 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran:water (2:1, 335:168 ml) was treated with potassium carbonate (14 g, 101 mmol) and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (17.7 g, 81 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for five hours. The mixture was then poured into water (200 ml). The organic fraction was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 200 ml). The
organic fractions were combined, washed with water (2 x 200 ml) and then brine (1 x 200 ml), and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the title product was further purified by flash chromatography. Yield: 19.1 grams (99.2%).

NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title product.

**Preparation 12**

Preparation of (3'R) ethyl 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propionate

![Chemical structure](image)

The title product was prepared essentially as described in Preparation 11, *supra*, except that an equimolar amount of (3'R) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate was employed instead of the (3'S) ethyl 3-[piperidin-3-yl]propionate employed therein.

**Preparation 13**

Preparation of (3'S) 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propanol

![Chemical structure](image)

A solution of (3'S) ethyl 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propionate (17.1 g, 60 mmol) in dry diethyl acetate (600 ml) was cooled to 0°C. Lithium aluminum hydride powder (2.5 g, 65 mmol) was gradually added to the mixture. The resulting mixture was stirred at 0°C and slowly warmed to room temperature within two hours. The
reaction was stopped by the slow addition of water (200 ml) and 15% aqueous sodium hydroxide (50 ml). The organic fraction was extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 300 ml). The combined layer was washed with water (2 x 200 ml) and then brine (1 x 200 ml) and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to provide 13.2 grams (90% yield) of the title product.

NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title product.

**Preparation 14**

Preparation of (3'S) 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propanol

![Chemical Structure]

The title product was prepared essentially as described in Preparation 13, supra, except that an equimolar amount of (3'S) ethyl 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propionate was employed instead of the (3'R) ethyl 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propionate employed therein.

**Preparation 15**

Preparation of (3'S) 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propyl bromide

![Chemical Structure]

To a cold (0°C) solution of triphenylphosphine (19.95 g, 76 mmol) in anhydrous methylene chloride (110 ml) was added bromine dropwise until the solution turned pale yellow. A few crystals of
triphenylphosphine were added to the mixture to bring the color back to white. To this mixture was added a suspension of (3'S) 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propanol (13.2 g, 54.4 mmol) and pyridine (8.0 g, 76 mmol) in dry methylene chloride (110 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred for five hours while warming to room temperature.

The reaction was stopped by adding water (200 ml). The organic fraction was extracted with methylene chloride (3 x 200 ml). The combined organic layer was washed with water (2 x 200 ml), then brine (1 x 100 ml), and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to provide a light brownish crude product, which was further purified by flash chromatography to yield 11.6 grams (70%) of the desired title product. NMR and IR were consistent with the title product.

**Preparation 16**

Preparation of (3'R) 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propyl bromide

The title product was prepared essentially as described in Preparation 15, supra, except that an equimolar amount of (3'R) 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propanol was employed instead of the (3'S) 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propanol employed therein.

**Method A**

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-hydroxymethyl-1H-indole.
In 950 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran under an argon atmosphere was added lithium aluminum hydride (18.40 g, 0.49 mol). The resulting mixture was placed over an ice bath. An aliquot of 1-methylindole-2-carboxylic acid (84.92 g, 0.49 mol) was dissolved in an additional 475 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran and then added slowly (over about 45-50 minutes) to the lithium aluminum hydride mixture. The ice was removed from around the round bottom flask and warm water was added to the bath to raise the reaction temperature. The reaction mixture was then stirred at room temperature for 60-90 minutes. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

Once the reaction had progressed sufficiently, the reaction vessel was placed in an ice bath and 20 ml of water were slowly added to the reaction mixture. This was followed by the sequential addition of 20 ml of 5 N sodium hydroxide and then 60 ml of water. The organic fraction was dried using CELITE™ followed by sodium sulfate. The organic solvents were then removed by vacuum to yield a white solid. The white solid was then dissolved in toluene heated to reflux. The mixture was then cooled to room temperature and then permitted to remain overnight in a refrigerator. The off-white crystals were then collected, washed with cool toluene, and then dried in a vacuum oven. Yield 63.65 grams (81.4%). FDMS 161.

Analysis for C_{10}H_{11}NO:

Theory: C, 74.51; H, 6.88; N, 8.69.
Found: C, 74.73; H, 6.90; N, 8.76.

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxymethyl)-1H-indole
A one liter round bottom flask with a nitrogen atmosphere was charged with sodium hydride (9.28 grams of a 60% NaH solution in mineral oil, 0.232 mol) and N,N-dimethylformamide (211 ml). To the resulting mixture was slowly added 1-methyl-2-hydroxymethyl-1H-indole (34.0 g, 0.211 mol) dissolved in 100 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. This addition resulted in the formation of a slight exotherm. The resulting reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for about three hours.

1-Chloro-4-fluorobenzene (30.29 g, 0.232 mmol) was then added to the above reaction mixture, after which the resulting mixture was heated to 80°C and maintained at this temperature overnight. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was then allowed to cool. The reaction mixture was then poured into about one liter of water and stirred for about one hour. The solids were removed by filtration and washed with water.

The desired product was then recrystallized from benzene and the solvents were removed in vacuo.

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title compound. FDMS 271 (M+).

Analysis for C_{16}H_{14}ClNO:

Theory:    C, 70.72; H, 5.19; N, 5.15.

Found:     C, 70.98; H, 5.18; N, 5.37.

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxyethyl)-3-(4-
methylpiperidin-1-yl)methyl-1H-indole (Example 14)
Under a nitrogen atmosphere 4-methylpiperidine (0.109 ml, 0.09 g, 0.92 mmol), dissolved in 2.0 ml of ethyl acetate, was added to a round bottom flask which was then placed in an ice bath. Concentrated hydrochloric acid (0.084 ml) was then added and the reaction mixture was removed from the ice bath. To the reaction mixture were added formaldehyde (0.304 g, 1.01 mmol), sodium acetate (0.113 g, 1.38 mmol), and 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxymethyl)-1H-indole (0.250 g, 0.92 mmol). The resulting mixture was then heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature overnight. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The solvents were removed in vacuo. The solids were then taken up in methylene chloride. The solvents were then removed in vacuo. The desired product was then recrystallized from ethyl acetate. The desired title product was further purified by chromatography. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 382.
Analysis for C_{23}H_{27}ClN_{2}O:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>72.14;</td>
<td>72.33;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>7.11;</td>
<td>7.22;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>7.31;</td>
<td>7.47;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Method B**

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxymethyl)-3-[2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole (Example 106)
1-Methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl-1H-indole (0.30 g, 1.10 mmol), dissolved in 2.0 ml of tetrahydrofuran, was placed in a round bottom flask under an argon atmosphere. To this solution was added oxalyl chloride (0.294 g, 2.32 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 45 minutes. The solvents were removed in vacuo, leaving a dark brown oil.

The brown oil was taken up in 2.0 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran and 4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidine (1.07 g, 6.38 mmol), dissolved in about 10 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran, was added. The resulting reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 30 minutes. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The solids were removed by filtration and the solvents in filtrate were removed by evaporation. The residue from the filtrate was then taken up in methylene chloride and washed with a saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, followed by three extractions with 1.0 N hydrochloric acid.

The aqueous fractions from the above extractions were combined, basified with 1 N sodium hydroxide and then extracted thrice with methylene chloride. This organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by radial chromatography.

NMR and IR were consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS (M⁺) 493.

Analysis for C_{28}H_{32}ClN_{3}O_{3}:

Theory: C, 68.07; H, 6.53; N, 8.51.
Found: \( \text{C, 67.97; H, 6.66; N, 8.27.} \)

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxymethyl)-3-[4-(phenyl)piperazin-1-yl]methyl-1H-indole (Example 20)

Under a nitrogen atmosphere in a round bottom flask, phenylpiperazine (0.149 g, 0.920 mmol) was dissolved in 2.0 ml of dichloroethane. The reaction vessel was placed in an ice bath. Concentrated hydrochloric acid (0.084 ml, 1.01 mmol) was added and the reaction vessel was removed from the ice bath. Paraformaldehyde (0.304 g, 1.01 mmol) and sodium acetate (0.113 g, 0.920 mmol) were then added, followed by the addition of 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxymethyl)-1H-indole (0.250 g, 0.920 mmol). The reaction mixture was then heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature for about six hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was then stirred at room temperature for about three days.

The solvents were removed by vacuum and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and a 10% potassium carbonate solution. The organic fraction was washed with water, followed by 1.0 N hydrochloric acid. The acidic aqueous fraction was basified with a 10% potassium carbonate solution. The organic component was dried by dripping through sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo.

The desired product was recrystallized from ethyl acetate. NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 445 (M+).
Analysis for \( \text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{28}\text{ClN}_3\text{O} \):
Method C1

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxyethyl)-3-[2-chloro-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

1-Methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxyethyl)-1H-indole (1.00 g, 3.68 mmol), dissolved in 7.0 ml of diethyl ether in a round bottom flask under a nitrogen atmosphere. To the above solution was added oxalyl chloride (0.981 g, 7.73 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 60 minutes. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The solvents were removed by decanting and the crystals were rinsed five times with cold diethyl ether. The solvents and rinses were collected, and placed in a freezer for about three days. The crystals were collected and dried in a vacuum oven to yield 1.15 grams (86.3%) of the desired title product.

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxyethyl)-3-[2-(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole (Example 102)
Under a nitrogen atmosphere, 4-methylpiperidine (0.490 ml, 0.411 g, 4.14 mmol) was dissolved in 3.0 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran in a round bottom flask over an ice bath. To this reaction mixture was added 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl)-3-[2-chloro-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole (0.500 g, 1.39 mmol) and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between methylene chloride and 1.0 N sodium hydroxide. The organic fraction was washed with 1.0 N sulfuric acid, followed by a wash with brine. The organic fraction was then dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was recrystallized from ethyl acetate.

NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 425 (M+).

Analysis for C_{24}H_{25}ClN_{2}O_{3}:

Theory: C, 67.84; H, 5.93; N, 6.59.

Found: C, 68.04; H, 5.85; N, 6.74.

**Method C2**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-1-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]carbonyl]methyl]-1H-indole (Example 77)
A round bottom flask under a nitrogen atmosphere was charged with 1-methyl-2-(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl)-3-[2-[4-(piperdin-1-yl)piperdin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole (0.1414 g, 0.282 mmol) and 2.8 ml of denatured ethanol. To this mixture was added sodium borohydride (0.064 g, 1.69 mmol). The reaction mixture was then stirred at room temperature overnight. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The solvents were removed by evaporation and the residue was partitioned between methylene chloride and water. The aqueous fraction was washed twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by chromatography. NMR was consistent with the proposed title product. FDMS 495 (M+).

Analysis for C_{28}H_{34}ClN_{3}O_{3}:

Theory: C, 67.80; H, 6.91; N, 8.47.

Found: C, 67.86; H, 6.90; N, 8.45.

Method D

Preparation of methyl indole-2-carboxylate.
Indole-2-carboxylic acid (47.0 g, 292 mmol) was dissolved in 200 ml of methanol. To this solution was added 6 ml of concentrated sulfuric acid. The resulting mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature for about 16 hours. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and the solids were removed by filtration and then washed with 200 ml of methanol. The crystals were dried in a vacuum oven, yielding 39.5 grams (77%) of the desired title product as white needles. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of methyl 1-[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]indole-2-carboxylate.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{alkylation} & \quad \text{OCH}_3 \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{OCH}_3
\end{align*}
\]

Under an argon atmosphere methyl indole-2-carboxylate (1.50 g, 8.56 mmol) was dissolved in 8.6 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. The solution was placed in an ice bath and sodium hydride (0.377 g, 9.42 mmol) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred for 20 minutes over ice and then permitted to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was then stirred for about 90 minutes at room temperature, after which time it was placed again in an ice bath.

2-(1-Tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl iodide (4.53 g, 9.42 mmol), prepared essentially as described in Preparation 15, dissolved in 15 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was then added and the resulting mixture was stirred in an ice bath for about three days. The reaction mixture was then poured over water and the solids were collected by filtration. The solids were taken up in methylene chloride and dried over magnesium
sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield 4.98 grams (>99%) of the desired title product as a yellowish white foam. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of methyl 1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]indole-2-carboxylate.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{alkylation} \\
\text{OCH}_3
\end{align*}
\]

Under an argon atmosphere methyl indole-2-carboxylate (1.00 g, 5.71 mmol) was dissolved in 5.7 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. The solution was placed in an ice bath and sodium hydride (0.251 g of a 60% solution, 6.28 mmol) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred for 20 minutes over ice and then permitted to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was then stirred for about 60 minutes at room temperature, after which time it was placed again in an ice bath.

3-(1-Tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl iodide (3.11 g, 6.28 mmol), dissolved in 8 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide was then added and the resulting mixture was stirred in an ice bath overnight. The reaction mixture was then poured over water and the solids were collected by filtration. The solids were taken up in methylene chloride, washed with water, then brine, and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield 3.38 grams (>99%) of the desired title product. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Preparation of 2-hydroxymethyl-1-[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole.

Under an argon atmosphere lithium aluminum hydride (0.325 g, 8.56 mmol) was dissolved in 8.6 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. The resulting solution was placed in an ice bath and methyl 1-[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]indole-2-carboxylate (4.68 g, 8.52 mmol), dissolved in about 10 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran, was added. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature.

To the reaction mixture 0.35 ml of water were carefully added, followed by the addition of 0.35 ml of 5.0 N sodium hydroxide, and then 1.0 ml of water. The solids were removed by filtration and the solvents in the filtrate were removed in vacuo. The residue from the filtrate was redissolved in methylene chloride. The desired product was then dried over magnesium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo to yield 3.96 grams (92.4%) of the title product as a foam. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of 2-hydroxymethyl-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole.
Under an argon atmosphere methyl 1-[3-(1-tritylpipеридин-3-ил)пропил]индол-2-карбоксилат (3.38 г, 6.23 ммоль) was dissolved in 3.1 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. The reaction vessel was then placed in an ice bath and lithium aluminum hydride (0.236 г, 6.23 ммоль) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred in an ice bath for about ten minutes and then at room temperature overnight. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

To the reaction mixture were added 0.24 ml water, followed by 0.24 ml of 5.0 N sodium hydroxide, followed by 0.72 ml of water. The residue was redissolved in methylene chloride. The desired product was then dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo to yield 2.89 grams (90.1%) of the title product as a foam. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of 2-[(4-хлорфенил)метил]-1-[(2-хлорпропил)етил]-1H-индол.

[Diagram of chemical structures]
Under an argon atmosphere 2-hydroxymethyl-1-[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole (3.91 g, 7.81 mmol) was dissolved in about 10 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. The resulting solution was then placed in an ice bath and sodium hydride (0.468 g, 11.71 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 30 minutes. To the reaction mixture 1-chloro-4-fluorobenzene (0.915 ml, 1.12 g, 8.59 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about four days, protected from light. The reaction mixture was poured into ice water and the solids were collected by filtration. After a washing with water, the solids were dried in a vacuum oven. The desired product was recrystallized from ethyl acetate and washed with cool ethyl acetate to yield 2.62 grams (54.9%). Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole.

Under an argon atmosphere 2-hydroxymethyl-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole (2.89 g, 5.61 mmol) was dissolved in about 11.2 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. The resulting solution was then placed in an ice bath and sodium hydride (0.247 g of a 60% suspension in mineral oil, 6.18 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 60 minutes. To the reaction mixture 1-chloro-4-fluorobenzene (0.658 ml, 0.807 g, 6.18 mmol)
was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was then heated to 80°C and maintained at this temperature for about eight hours. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and stirred at this temperature overnight. Another half equivalence of sodium hydride was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight again. Another half equivalence of 1-chloro-4-fluorobenzene was added and the reaction mixture was heated to 80°C.

The reaction mixture was poured into ice water and then partitioned between methylene chloride and brine. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The desired product was further purified by chromatography to yield 1.0 grams (29%). Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[2-(piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 137)

Under an argon atmosphere 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole was dissolved in 7.0 ml of methylene chloride. The reaction solution was then placed on an ice bath and formic acid (0.3383 g) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred in the ice bath for about five hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.
The reaction mixture was partitioned between methylene chloride and 1.0 N sodium hydroxide. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield a foam. The desired product was further purified by chromatography to yield 0.1864 grams (68.7%). NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 368 (M+).

Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}O:

Theory: C, 71.63; H, 6.83; N, 7.59.

Found: C, 71.66; H, 6.86; N, 7.87.

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole. (Example 139)

The title compound was prepared essentially as described above for 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[2-(piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole except that an equimolar amount of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole was employed instead of the 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole employed therein. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure. Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Method E
Preparation of 3-bromo-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole.

Under an argon atmosphere in a round bottom flask 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole (0.992 g, 1.59 mmol) was dissolved in 4.0 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. The reaction vessel was then placed in an ice bath and N-bromosuccinimide (0.282 g, 1.587 mmol of a recently recrystallized lot), dissolved in 4.0 ml of tetrahydrofuran, was slowly added. The reaction mixture was stirred for about three hours over an ice bath.

The reaction mixture was poured over water in which 2.5 grams of sodium sulfate was dissolved, and the aqueous phase was extracted thrice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo, yielding 0.26 grams (23%) of the desired compound. The solvents were removed in vacuo from the mother liquor and the resulting residue was recrystallized in ethyl acetate and hexanes to obtain an additional 0.65 grams (58%) of the desired material. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of (RS) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole.
Under an argon atmosphere in a round bottom flask, 3-bromo-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole (0.225 g, 0.319 mmol) was dissolved in dry tetrahydrofuran. The reaction vessel was placed in a dry ice/acetone bath. To this solution was added a solution of t-butyllithium (0.64 mmol) dropwise. The resulting mixture was stirred for 35 minutes in the dry ice/acetone bath.

To this reaction mixture was added the Weinreb amide N-methyl-N-methoxy-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetamide (0.0903 g, 0.335 mmol), which had been dissolved in 2.0 ml of tetrahydrofuran and cooled in the dry ice/acetone bath. The resulting mixture was stirred for about two hours and then poured into a saturated ammonium chloride solution. The aqueous fraction was extracted thrice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by chromatography. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of (RS) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole. (Example 70)
Under an argon atmosphere (RS) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yI]acetyl]-1H-indole (0.0162 g, 0.0194 mmol) was dissolved in 0.2 ml methylene chloride. The reaction vessel was then placed in an ice bath and formic acid (0.073 ml, 0.194 mmol) was slowly added. The resulting mixture was stirred for about one hour over ice. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was then stirred at room temperature for two additional hours and then an additional 5.0 equivalents of formic acid were added, followed by stirring at room temperature.

The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1.0 N sodium hydroxide and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed by evaporation.

NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass (M+1) for C_{35}H_{48}ClN_{4}O_{2}:

- Theory: 591.3476.
- Found: 591.3476.
Method F

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 47)

Under an argon atmosphere a round bottom flask was charged with 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-(piperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole (Example 100) (0.203 g, 0.493 mmol), dissolved in 2.0 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. Lithium aluminum hydride (3.0 ml of a 1.0 M solution in tetrahydrofuran) was then added. The resulting mixture was then heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature for about four hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and 10 ml of a 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methanol solution was added. To this mixture was then added 5 ml of a saturated Rochelle’s salt solution. The solvents were then removed in vacuo.

The residue was then partitioned between methylene chloride and a saturated Rochelle’s salt solution. The organic fraction was washed with water and brine. The organic fraction was then dried with sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo.

The desired title product was further purified by chromatography to yield 0.1112 grams (56.9%).

NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 398 (M+).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{27}ClN_{2}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 69.25; H, 6.82; N, 7.02.
Found: C, 69.51; H, 6.86; N, 6.81.

**Method G**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 48) and 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 33)

Under a nitrogen atmosphere a round bottom flask was charged with 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-(piperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole (Example 100) (0.305 g, 0.824 mmol). Borane-tetrahydrofuran complex (4.12 ml of a 1.0 M borane solution in THF, 4.12 mmol) was added slowly and the resulting mixture was stirred for about 30 minutes. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was stirred a total of one hour and then quenched with methanol.
To the reaction mixture was added ethanol, sodium carbonate, and cesium fluoride, and the resulting mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 10% sodium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice more with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired products were further purified by radial chromatography.

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 33)

NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 396 (M+).

Analysis for C$_{24}$H$_{29}$ClN$_{2}$O:

Theory: C, 72.62; H, 7.36; N, 7.06.

Found: C, 72.40; H, 7.35; N, 7.25.

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 48)

NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 412 (M+).

Analysis for C$_{24}$H$_{29}$ClN$_{2}$O$_{2}$:

Theory: C, 69.80; H, 7.08; N, 6.78.

Found: C, 70.02; H, 7.13; N, 7.00.

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-[N-methyl-N-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 54) and 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-N-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 38)
Under a nitrogen atmosphere a round bottom flask was charged with 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-N-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole (0.3349 g, 0.686 mmol) and placed in an ice bath. Borane-tetrahydrofuran complex (4.11 mL of a 1.0 M borane solution in THF, 4.11 mmol) was added slowly and the ice bath was removed. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was stirred for about one hour and then 0.33 mL of a 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methanol solution was added. Sodium hydroxide (1.74 mL of a 5.0 N solution) was then added and the resulting mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature overnight.

The aqueous fraction was extracted twice more with tetrahydrofuran. The organic fractions were combined, washed twice with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired products were further purified by radial chromatography.
2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(2-[N-methyl-N-(1-
methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 38)
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 459 (M+).

Analysis for C_{25}H_{31}Cl_{2}N_{3}O:
Found: C, 65.07; H, 6.85; N, 9.06.

2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(1-hydroxy-2-[N-methyl-N-(1-
methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 54)
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 475 (M+).
Analysis for C_{25}H_{31}Cl_{2}N_{3}O_{2}:
Theory: C, 63.02; H, 6.55; N, 8.82.
Found: C, 63.43; H, 6.88; N, 8.92.

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(3-
dimethylaminopropyl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 30) and 2-[(4-
chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(3-
(dimethylamino)propylamino)carbonyl)methyl]-1H-indole (Example 76)
Under a nitrogen atmosphere borane-tetrahydrofuran complex (7.42 ml of a 1.0 M solution in THF, 7.42 mmol) was added to a round bottom flask containing 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[3-(dimethylamino)propylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole (0.529 g, 1.24 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for about one hour. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction was then quenched by the addition of a 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methanol solution.

The solvents were removed by evaporation. The residue was taken up in a mixture of ethanol (8 ml), sodium carbonate (2.62 g, 24.72 mmol), and cesium fluoride (2.88 g, 18.94 mmol). The resulting mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature overnight.

The reaction mixture was partitioned between methylene chloride and a 10% sodium bisulfate solution. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired products were further purified by chromatography.
2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[(3-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 30)
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 399 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₃H₃₀ClN₃O:
  Theory:  C, 69.07; H, 7.56; N, 10.51.
  Found:   C, 69.23; H, 7.79; N, 10.52.

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[3-(dimethylamino)propylamino]carbonyl]methyl]-1H-indole (Example 76)
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 413 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₃H₂₈ClN₃O₂:
  Theory:  C, 66.74; H, 6.82; N, 10.15.
  Found:   C, 66.89; H, 6.96; N, 10.11.

**Method H**

Preparation of 3-bromo-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole

![Chemical Structure](image)

Under an argon atmosphere in a round bottom flask 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole (5.0 g, 18.40 mmol) was dissolved in 46 ml of tetrahydrofuran. To this solution was added N-bromosuccinimide (3.28 g, 18.4 mmol of a freshly recrystallized lot), dissolved in 46 ml of tetrahydrofuran. The resulting mixture was stirred over an ice bath for about 3.5 hours, after which time the reaction mixture was poured into about 500 ml of water in which 5.0 grams of sodium sulfate had been dissolved.
The aqueous fraction was extracted thrice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, washed with a saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and, then washed with brine. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo.

The desired title product was recrystallized from ethyl acetate. Yield: 5.36 g (83.1%). Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

Under an argon atmosphere in a round bottom flask, 3-bromo-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole (0.500 g, 1.426 mmol) was dissolved in 3.0 ml of tetrahydrofuran. The reaction vessel was then placed over a dry ice/acetone bath. To this solution was added a solution of t-butyllithium (1.68 ml, 2.85 mmol) and the Weinreb amide, N-methyl-N-methoxy-[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]acetamide (0.631 g, 1.426 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred over dry ice/acetone for about 30 minutes, followed by thirty minutes of stirring on a methanol/dry ice bath. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The reaction mixture was poured into a saturated ammonium chloride solution. The aqueous fraction was extracted thrice with methylene chloride, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by chromatography and then recrystallized from ethyl acetate. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-(piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole (Example 67)

Under an argon atmosphere 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole (0.2723 g, 0.417 mmol) was dissolved in 2.1 ml of methylene chloride. To this solution formic acid (0.079 ml, 0.096 g, 2.084 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 2.5 hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The reaction mixture was partitioned between methylene chloride and 1.0 N sodium hydroxide. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield the desired title product. NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 411 (M⁺)
Analysis for C₂₄H₂₇ClN₂O₂:
Theory: C, 70.15; H, 6.62; N, 6.82.
Found: C, 69.87; H, 6.54; N, 6.79.

Method I

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-carboxy-1H-indole
Under an argon atmosphere 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-carboxy-1H-indole (0.500 g, 1.426 mmol) was dissolved in 14.3 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. The reaction vessel was then placed over a dry ice/acetone bath. To this solution t-butyllithium (1.72 ml of a 1.7 M solution in pentane, 2.92 mmol) was added dropwise. The resulting mixture was stirred for about 15 minutes over the dry ice/acetone bath. Carbon dioxide was then bubbled through the reaction mixture for about ten minutes and then the mixture was stirred for an additional ten minutes. The reaction vessel was then placed on a methanol/ice/dry ice bath and carbon dioxide was bubbled through the reaction mixture for an additional ten minutes.

The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and was then poured into 100 ml of 1.0 N hydrochloric acid to which about 50 grams of dry ice had been added. The resulting mixture was stirred for about thirty minutes. The solids were collected by filtration. The desired product was triturated in methylene chloride. Yield: 0.37 g (82%)

Analysis for C_{17}H_{14}ClNO_{3}:

Theory: C, 64.67; H, 4.47; N, 4.44.
Found: C, 64.84; H, 4.60; N, 4.54.

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[N,N-bis(3-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]carbonyl]-1H-indole (Example 58)
Under an argon atmosphere 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-carboxy-1H-indole (0.100 g, 0.317 mmol) was dissolved in 3.2 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. To this solution were added N,N-bis(3-dimethylaminopropyl)amine (0.074 ml, 0.623 g, 0.332 mmol), 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (0.091 g, 0.475 mmol), and hydroxybenztriazole (0.0642 g, 0.475 mmol). The resulting mixture was then heated for 6 hours and then stirred at room temperature overnight. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The reaction mixture was then partitioned between methylene chloride and water. The aqueous fraction was extracted thrice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by radial chromatography.

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 483 (M-1).
FABMS 485 (M+1)

Analysis for C₂₇H₃₇ClN₄O₂:

Theory: C, 66.86; H, 7.69; N, 11.55.
Found: C, 66.91; H, 7.54; N, 11.69.

**Method J**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-[1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]piperidin-4-yl]ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole (Example 69 B)
Under a nitrogen atmosphere a 10 ml round bottom flask was charged with 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-{[(piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]carbonyl}-1H-indole (0.091 g, 0.222 mmol), 3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl iodide (0.110 g, 0.2224 mmol), potassium carbonate (0.0450 g, 0.3255 mmol), and 1.5 ml of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight and then poured into ice water. The solids were collected by filtration and rinsed with cold water. The solids were dissolved in methylene chloride and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired product was further purified by chromatography. Yield: 0.1166 grams (67.3%).

FDMS 779 (M+2).

Analysis for C_{51}H_{56}ClN_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 78.69; H, 7.25; N, 5.40.

Found: C, 78.92; H, 7.41; N, 5.27.

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-{[2-[1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]piperidin-4-yl]ethyl]carbonyl}-1H-indole (Example 69C)

Under a nitrogen atmosphere in a round bottom flask 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-{[2-[1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-
yl|propyl|piperidin-4-yl|ethyl|carbonyl|-1H-indole (0.1006 g, 0.1292 mmol) was dissolved in 0.6 ml of of methylene chloride. To this solution was added formic acid (0.0244 ml, 0.0297 g, 0.646 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred for several hours at room temperature, protected from light. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The reaction mixture was partitioned between methylene chloride and 1.0 N sodium hydroxide. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by radial chromatography. NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 536 (M+1).

Analysis for C₃₂H₄₂ClN₃O₂:

Theory: C, 71.69; H, 7.90; N, 7.84.
Found: C, 71.45; H, 7.85; N, 7.61.

Method K

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-formyl-1H-indole (Example 236)

Under a nitrogen atmosphere a round bottom flask was charged with 0.63 ml of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide. The reaction vessel was placed in a -20°C bath and then phosphorous oxychloride (0.187 ml, 0.310 g, 2.02 mmol) was carefully added. The resulting mixture was stirred in an ice bath for about twenty minutes and 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole (0.50 g, 1.84 mmol)
in 3.4 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide, was added. The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about ninety minutes. The reaction mixture was then placed over an oil bath and heated to 55°C and maintained at this temperature for about one hour. The reaction mixture was then permitted to cool to room temperature and was then poured into water. Sodium hydroxide (10 ml of a 5.0 N solution) was added and heated to reflux. The resulting mixture was cooled and the solids were then collected by filtration. NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 299 (M+).
Analysis for C₁₇H₁₄ClNO₂:
Theory: C, 68.12; H, 4.71; N, 4.67.
Found: C, 67.90; H, 4.66; N, 4.76.

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 55)

Under a nitrogen atmosphere a round bottom flask was charged with 6.7 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. To this was added diisopropylamine (0.196 ml, 0.1417 g, 1.401 mmol) and the reaction vessel was placed in an ice bath. To this mixture was slowly added n-butyllithium (0.88 ml of a 1.6 M solution in hexanes, 1.401 mmol) and the resulting mixture was stirred in an ice bath for about 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was placed in a dry ice/acetone bath, methyl acetate was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for fifteen minutes over a dry ice/acetone bath. Starting aldehyde was added in a total of 7.0 ml of tetrahydrofuran and stirred over a dry ice/acetone bath of one hour and then placed in an ice bath for about 30 minutes. The reaction mixture
was poured into an ammonium chloride solution (32 g in 100 ml of water). The aqueous fraction was extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further by radial chromatography. NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. IR was consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 373 (M+).

Analysis for C₂₀H₂₀ClNO₄:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C, %</td>
<td>64.26</td>
<td>64.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H, %</td>
<td>5.39</td>
<td>5.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N, %</td>
<td>3.75</td>
<td>3.79</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Preparation of 3-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]prop-2-enolic acid

Under a nitrogen atmosphere a round bottom flask is charged with 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 55) (0.149 g, 0.398 mmol) and 6.11 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. To this solution is added 1.22 ml of a 2.0 N lithium hydroxide aqueous solution and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about two hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue is partitioned between methylene chloride and water. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was triturated with diethyl ether. Analytical data was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[(4-(dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl)carbonyl]ethenyl]-1H-indole (Example 44)

Under a nitrogen atmosphere dimethylaminopiperidine was dissolved in 3.0 ml of methylene chloride. To this solution were added 3-[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]prop-2-enolic acid (0.050 g, 0.1462 mmol) and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (0.0356 g, 0.278 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight.

The reaction mixture was partitioned between a saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was basified with 1.0 N sodium hydroxide and extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, washed with 1.0 N hydrochloric acid, then with brine, and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by radial chromatography. NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass for C₂₆H₃₀Cl₃N₃O₂:
Theory: 452.2105.
Found: 452.2099.

Method L

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(methoxy carbonyl)ethenyl]-1H-indole
A round bottom flask was charged with 10% palladium on activated carbon (0.150 g), 20 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide and 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(methoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-1H-indole (1.44 g, 4.22 mmol). The reaction vessel was then placed under a hydrogen atmosphere for two hours. The reaction mixture was then passed through a CELITE™ pad and then partitioned between water and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, washed with water and then brine, and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by chromatography.

Preparation of 3-[(2-carboxy)ethyl]propanoic acid

Under a nitrogen atmosphere in a round bottom flask 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(methoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-1H-indole (0.275 g, 0.771 mmol) was dissolved in 8 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. To this solution was added 4.0 ml of a 2.0 N lithium hydroxide solution. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.
The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between methylene chloride and 5% citric acid. The aqueous fraction was extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield the desired title product. Yield 0.2984 grams (>99%).

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[(4-(dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl)carbonyl]ethyl]-1H-indole (Example 43).

Under a nitrogen atmosphere 3-[(2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoic acid (0.286 g, 0.832 mmol) was dissolved in 6 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran. To this solution 1,1’-carbonyldiimidazole (0.141 g, 0.874 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about two hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was then heated to 65°C and maintained at this temperature for about 35 minutes. To this reaction mixture dimethylaminopiperidine (0.112 g, 0.874 mmol), dissolved in about 3.6 ml of tetrahydrofuran. This mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight.

The reaction mixture was then heated to 60°C and maintained at this temperature for about 30 minutes. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between methylene chloride and water. The aqueous fraction was extracted with methylene chloride again. The organic fractions were combine, washed twice with water, then with brine, and then dried over sodium sulfate. The
solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by chromatography.
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 453 (M+)<br>
Analysis for C₂₅H₃₂ClN₃O₂:<br>
Theory: C, 68.78; H, 7.10; N, 9.26.<br>Found: C, 68.74; H, 7.04; N, 9.38.

**Method M**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[3-[4-(N,N-dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]propyl]-1H-indole (Example 41).

Under a nitrogen atmosphere around bottom flask is charged with 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[[4-(dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]carbonyl]ethyl]-1H-indole (0.194 g, 0.428 mmol). The flask was then placed in an ice bath and borane-tetrahydrofuran complex (1.71 ml of a 1.0 M solution in THF, 1.71 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was then removed from the ice bath and stirred at room temperature for about 90 minutes. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. A 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:methanol solution (0.20 ml total) was added, followed by the addition of 2.0 ml of 5.0 N sodium hydroxide.

The resulting mixture was refluxed overnight. The solvents were removed by evaporation and the residue was partitioned between water and methylene chloride. The organic fraction was
washed with brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo.
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FABMS 440 (M+1)
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.
Analysis for C₂₆H₃₄ClN₃O:
   Theory:  C, 70.97; H, 7.79; N, 9.55.
   Found:   C, 70.73; H, 7.65; N, 9.44.

**Method N**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole (Example 42) and 1,2-dimethyl-3-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole (Example 237)

Under a nitrogen atmosphere 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propanoyl]-1H-indole (0.0737 g, 0.1793 mmol) was dissolved in 1.8 ml of dioxane and borane-dimethylsulfide complex (0.108 ml, 1.07 mmol) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. A 1:1 tetrahydrofuran:water mixture (0.3 ml) was then added as well as 1.5 ml of 5.0 N sodium
hydroxide. The reaction mixture was heated to 85°C and maintained at this temperature overnight, and then briefly raised to 225°C.

The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between methylene chloride and 1.0 N sodium hydroxide. The organic fraction was washed with brine and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title products were further purified by chromatography. Analytical data obtained was consistent with the proposed title structure (See Examples 42 and 237, infra).

Preparation of 2,4-dichloro-1-ethynylbenzene

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH} & \\
\text{Cl} & \\
\text{Cl} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

In a 500 ml round bottom flask 2,4-dichloroiodobenzene (3 ml, 22.1 mmol), triethylamine (6.16 ml, 44.2 mmol), and (trimethylsilyl)acetylene (3.12 ml, 22.1 mmol) were admixed in acetonitrile (6.16 ml, 44.2 mmol) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The mixture was bubbled with nitrogen gas for 10 minutes. To this mixture bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(II) chloride (775 mg, 1.10 mmol) and cuprous iodide (105 mg, 0.552 mmol) were added and the resulting mixture was refluxed for four hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature and evaporated to leave an oily product.

The residue was dissolved in methanol (50 ml) and tetrahydrofuran (150 ml), and solid potassium carbonate (30.54 g, 0.221 mol) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 19 hours. The progress of this reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1M potassium carbonate and ethyl acetate. The aqueous
fraction was back-extracted thrice with ethyl acetate. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield 2.6 grams of the desired title product. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of 2,4-dichloro-1-(2-bromoethen-1-yl)benzene

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Br} \\
\text{Cl} \\
\text{Cl}
\end{array}
\]

In a 100 ml round bottom flask borane tetrahydrofuran complex (1M in tetrahydrofuran, 4.8 ml, 4.82 mmol) was cooled to 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. To this complex 2-methylprop-2-ene (1.02 ml, 9.65 mmol) was added dropwise and the mixture was slowly warmed to ambient temperature and stirred at ambient temperature for one hour. The reaction mixture was diluted with hexamethylphosphoramide (5 ml), tetrahydrofuran (5 ml), cupric bromide (2.15 g, 9.65 mmol), and cupric acetate (3.85 g, 19.3 mmol), followed by the addition of water (86 µl, 4.82 mol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for six hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was diluted with brine and extracted thrice with diethyl ether. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 426 mg. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of 4-hydroxy-N-isopropylbutylamine
To a solution of 4-aminobutanol (2.0 mg, 22.4 mmol) in 110 ml of dichloroethane were added acetone (3.3 ml, 44.8 mmol), acetic acid (5 eq.), and sodium acetoxyborohydride (11.9 g, 56.09 mmol). The cloudy mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about 18 hours. The reaction was quenched with saturated sodium bicarbonate. Sodium hydroxide (1 M) was added to adjust the pH to about 10. The aqueous layer was extracted with a mixture of isopropyl alcohol and methylene chloride (1:3). The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The desired intermediate was further purified by bulb to bulb distillation to yield 1.4 grams as a clear oil. If desired, additional yield may be recovered by extracting the aqueous fraction with 3:1 toluene:butanol.

Preparation of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-hydroxy-N-isopropylbutylamine

A solution of 4-hydroxy-N-isopropylbutylamine (3.0 g, 22.8 mmol) in dioxane:water:1N sodium hydroxide (91 ml:28 ml:28 ml) was treated with di(t-butoxycarbonyl)ether (4.98 g, 22.8 mmol). The cloudy reaction mixture was stirred for five hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with methylene chloride. The organic phase was dried, filtered, and concentrated. The desired title product was further purified by high performance liquid chromatography affording 2.6 grams (49%) of a colorless oil.

Preparation of 2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzaldehyde
Lithium diisopropylamide was prepared by admixing diisopropylamine (5.79 ml, 41.3 mmol) in 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran. The resulting mixture was cooled to -78°C and treated with n-butyllithium in such a manner that the temperature did not raise above 64°C. After stirring the suspension for 45 minutes, the remainder of the tetrahydrofuran was added (70 ml), followed by the dropwise addition of 4-chlorophenyl fluoride (4.0 ml, 37.6 mmol). After 45 minutes N,N-dimethylformamide was added, also in a dropwise fashion. The resulting reaction mixture was stirred an additional ten minutes prior to quenching with acetic acid (6 ml), followed by water (100 ml). The cold mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and extracted twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, and filtered. The solvents were removed by vacuum. The residue was further purified by high performance liquid chromatography, affording 4.00 grams of a white solid. mp 41-43°C.

Preparation of 2-fluoro-5-methylbenzyl alcohol

A solution of 2-fluoro-5-methylbenzaldehyde (1.80 g, 12.3 mmol) in 3:1 tetrahydrofuran:methanol (82 ml total) at 0°C was treated with sodium borohydride (0.93 g, 24.6 mmol). The reaction was slowly
warmed to ambient temperature and stirred for about three hours. The reaction was quenched with water, transferred to a separatory funnel, and extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was further purified by high performance liquid chromatography to yield 1.3 grams (76%) of a clear oil.

Preparation of 2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzyl alcohol

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{F} \\
&\text{OH} \\
&\text{Cl}
\end{align*}
\]

The title intermediate was prepared essentially as was 2-fluoro-5-methylbenzyl alcohol, supra, except that an equimolar amount of 2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzaldehyde was employed instead of the 2-fluoro-5-methylbenzaldehyde employed therein.

Yield: 2.16 grams (86%) as a clear oil.

Preparation of 2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzyl bromide

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{F} \\
&\text{Br} \\
&\text{Cl}
\end{align*}
\]

A solution of 2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzyl alcohol (1.28 g, 7.97 mmol) in diethyl ether (26 ml) was treated with triphenylphosphine (2.72 g, 10.36 mmol), followed by carbon tetrabromide (3.44 g, 10.36 mmol). The resultant suspension was stirred for 3.5 hours, then filtered,
washing with diethyl ether. The filtrate was concentrated, then passed through a plug of silica to remove triphenylphosphate. The residue was then purified by liquid chromatography affording 2.0 grams of a clear oil.

Preparation of 4-(2-fluorobenzyloxy)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine

\[
\text{F} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{CH}_3 \\
\text{BoC} \\
\text{CH}_3
\]

A solution of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-hydroxy-N-isopropylbutylamine (539 mg, 2.33 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (11 ml) at -40°C was treated with potassium t-butoxide (1 M in tetrahydrofuran, 2.54 ml, 2.54 mmol). After 40 minutes, the suspension was cooled to -78°C and treated with a solution of 2-fluorobenzyl bromide (400 mg, 2.12 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (4 ml). The reaction was slowly warmed to room temperature and stirred for about five hours. The reaction was diluted with methylene chloride and washed with 1 M potassium carbonate and brine. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. The crude oil was purified by liquid chromatography to yield 555 mg (77%) of the title intermediate as a clear oil.

Preparation of 4-(2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzyloxy)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine

\[
\text{F} \quad \text{Cl} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{N} \quad \text{CH}_3 \\
\text{BoC} \\
\text{CH}_3
\]
The title intermediate was prepared essentially as described supra for 4-(2-fluorobenzoyloxy)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine, except that an equimolar amount of 2-fluoro-5-chlorobenzyl bromide was employed instead of the 2-fluorobenzyl bromide employed therein. Yield 237 mg (35%).

Preparation of 4-(2-fluorobenzoyloxy)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine

![Chemical Structure](Insert Image)

The desired intermediate was prepared from the deprotection of 4-(2-fluorobenzoyloxy)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine using standard techniques. The 4-(2-fluorobenzoyloxy)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine was admixed with a 4:1 mixture of methylene chloride and trifluoroacetic acid. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

Preparation of 4-(5-chloro-2-fluorobenzoyloxy)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine

![Chemical Structure](Insert Image)

The desired intermediate was prepared essentially as described for the 4-(2-fluorobenzoyloxy)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine above, except that an equimolar amount of 4-(5-chloro-2-fluorobenzoyloxy)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine was employed in place of the 4-.
(2-fluorobenzyl氧)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(isopropyl)butylamine
employed therein.
Yield: 138 mg (98%).

Preparation of 3-(5-bromo-2-fluorobenzyl氧)-1-[1-(t-
butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-2-yl]propane

3-[1-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-2-yl]propanol (800 mg, 3.29
mmol) was taken up in tetrahydrofuran (17 ml), cooled to -40°C, and
treated with potassium t-butoxide (1 M in tetrahydrofuran, 3.62 ml, 3.62
mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at -40°C for about 35 minutes,
then cooled to -78°C. To this mixture was then added 5-bromo-2-
fluorobenzyl bromide (881 mg, 3.29 mmol) as a solution in
tetrahydrofuran (5 ml). The resultant yellow reaction mixture was
slowly warmed to 0°C and stirred for about four hours. The reaction
mixture was diluted with methylene chloride and washed with 1 M
potassium carbonate and brine. The organic fraction was dried over
sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The crude oil was
purified by high performance liquid chromatography, yielding 707 mg
(50%) of the title intermediate as a clear oil.
Analysis for C$_{20}$H$_{29}$BrFNO$_3$:
Theory: C, 55.82; H, 6.79; N, 3.25.
Found: C, 55.54; H, 6.88; N, 3.34.

Preparation of 3-(5-bromo-2-fluorobenzyl氧)-1-(piperidin-2-yl)propane
3-(5-Bromo-2-fluorobenzyloxy)-1-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-2-yl]propane (590 mg, 1.37 mmol) was dissolved in methylene chloride (11 ml), cooled to 0°C, and treated with 3 ml of trifluoroacetic acid. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 20 minutes, then warmed to ambient temperature, and stirred an additional ten minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride and quenched with saturated sodium bicarbonate. The pH was adjusted to about 10 with 1 N sodium hydroxide. The aqueous fraction was back-extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated. Yield: 420 mg (93%). The resulting intermediate was used without further purification.

Preparation of 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide

A solution of 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl alcohol (20.0 g, 97.5 mmol) in diethyl ether (325 ml) was treated with triphenylphosphine (33.3 g, 127 mmol), followed by carbon tetrabromide (42.1 g, 127 mmol). The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about four hours. The precipitate was removed and washed with diethyl ether. The desired title product was further purified by bulb to bulb distillation [150°C, 5 mm Hg (house vacuum)]. Yield: 24.36 grams (93%) of a white, low melting solid.
Preparation of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)-but-2-ynyl alcohol

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{F} \\
\text{Br} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}
\]

A solution of 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (15.6 g, 58.1 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (290 ml) was added over 35 minutes to a mixture of 1,4-dihydroxy-2-butyne (20.0 g, 232 mmol) and sodium hydride (15.6 g of a 60% solution, 58.1 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred for 4.5 hours at ambient temperature. The reaction was quenched with 100 ml of a 1:1:1 brine:water:1 M potassium carbonate solution. The aqueous fraction was extracted with methylene chloride (3 x 300 ml). The desired title product was further purified by chromatography to yield 8.90 grams (56%).

Preparation of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)butanol

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{F} \\
\text{Br} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}
\]

A solution of 1,4-dihydroxybutane (4.0 ml, 45.13 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (62 ml) was treated with sodium hydride (1.98 g of a 60% solution, 49.63 mmol), and stirred for about 50 minutes at ambient temperature. The resulting mixture was cooled to 0°C and treated with 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (3.0 g, 11.28 mmol). The reaction mixture was then stirred for four hours at ambient temperature. The reaction was quenched with water. The aqueous
fraction was extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by high performance liquid chromatography. Yield: 1.8 grams (58%) as a clear oil. $\lambda_{\text{max}} = 271$ nm.

Analysis for $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{14}\text{BrFO}_2$:

Theory: C, 47.67; H, 5.09; Br, 28.83.

Found: C, 47.37; H, 5.15; Br, 28.55.

Preparation of N-$(t$-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxyloxy)-3,3-dimethylbutylamine

A stirred solution of 4-$(t$-butoxycarbonylamino)-2,2-dimethylbutan-1-ol (1.5 g, 6.90 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (49 ml) at $-45^\circ\text{C}$ was treated with potassium $t$-butoxide (1 M in tetrahydrofuran, 7.59 ml, 7.59 mmol). The anion was stirred for 30 minutes at $-45^\circ\text{C}$, then cooled to $-78^\circ\text{C}$ and treated with a tetrahydrofuran solution of 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (1.85 g, 6.90 mmol). The resulting yellow mixture was slowly warmed to ambient temperature and stirred for about 18 hours. The cloudy reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride and washed with 1 M potassium carbonate. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was further purified by preparative high performance liquid chromatography to yield 1.45 grams (52%) of the title intermediate as a colorless oil.

Preparation of N-$(t$-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxyloxy)-2,2-dimethylbutylamine
A stirred solution of 4-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-3,3-dimethylbutan-1-ol (1.0 g, 4.60 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (33 ml) at -45°C was treated with potassium t-butoxide (1 M in tetrahydrofuran, 5.06 ml, 5.06 mmol). The anion was stirred for 30 minutes at -45°C, then cooled to -78°C and treated with a tetrahydrofuran solution of 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (1.23 g, 4.60 mmol). The resulting yellow mixture was slowly warmed to 0°C and stirred for about four hours. The cloudy reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride (100 ml) and washed with 1 M potassium carbonate. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was further purified by preparative high performance liquid chromatography to yield 1.38 grams (74%) of the title intermediate as a colorless oil.

Preparation of 2-[(t-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-5-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxyloxy)-2-methylpentane

A stirred solution of 4-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-4,4-dimethylbutan-1-ol (1.11 g, 5.11 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (49 ml) at -45°C was treated with potassium t-butoxide (1 M in tetrahydrofuran, 5.62 ml, 5.62 mmol). The anion was stirred for 30 minutes at -45°C, then
cooled to -78°C and treated with a tetrahydrofuran solution of 2-fluoro-5-
bromobenzyl bromide (1.23 g, 4.60 mmol). The resulting yellow mixture
was slowly warmed to 0°C and stirred for about four hours. The
reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride (100 ml) and
washed with 1 M potassium carbonate (20 ml). The organic fraction was
dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and the solvents were removed in
vacuo. The residue was further purified by preparative high
performance liquid chromatography to yield 1.53 grams (74%) of the title
intermediate as a colorless oil.

Preparation of trans-4-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)cyclohexanol

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{HO} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{BoC}
\end{align*}
\]

To a solution of trans-4-aminocyclohexanol (5.00 g, 33.0
mmol) in dioxane (132 ml), water (41 ml) and 1 N sodium hydroxide (41
ml) was added t-butoxycarbonyl anhydride (14.4 g, 66 mmol). The cloudy
solution was stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was acidified to
pH 3.0 with solid sodium bisulfate. The resulting mixture was thrice
extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were
combined, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The
desired title intermediate was recrystallized from hexanes/ethyl acetate
to yield 6.5 grams (92%).

MS 216.24

Analysis for C_{11}H_{21}NO_{3}:

Theory: C, 61.37; H, 9.83; N, 6.50.

Found: C, 61.16; H, 9.54; N, 6.39.

Preparation of trans-[4-(butoxycarbonylamino)-1-[2-fluoro-5-
bromobenzylxylo]]cyclohexane
A solution of trans-4-(butoxycarbonylamino)cyclohexanol (550 mg, 2.32 mmol) in dry tetrahydrofuran (16.6 ml) was cooled to -40°C and treated with potassium t-butoxide (1 M in tetrahydrofuran, 2.55 ml, 2.55 mmol). The cloudy yellow reaction mixture was stirred for about thirty minutes, cooled to -78°C, and treated with 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (622 mg, 2.32 mmol). The resulting yellow mixture was gradually warmed to 0°C and stirred for about two hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was purified further by high performance liquid chromatography to yield 558 mg (62%) of the desired title intermediate as a white solid.

Analysis for C_{18}H_{25}BrFNO_{3}:

Theory: C, 53.74; H, 6.26; N, 3.48.
Found: C, 53.87; H, 6.16; N, 3.11.

Preparation of 3,3-dimethyl-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyrrolidin-2-one

The desired intermediate was prepared essentially as described in F. Scheinmann and A.V. Stachulski, Journal of Chemical Research, 1993:414 (1993). A solution of 3-methyl-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyrrolidin-2-one (8.63 g, 43.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (48 ml) was cooled to -78°C. The solution was treated with NaN[Si(CH_{3})_{2}]_{2} (56.3 ml, 56.3 mmol) and stirred for about 50 minutes
prior to quenching with methyl iodide (8.1 ml, 130 mmol). The reaction mixture was slowly warmed to ambient temperature, and stirring was continued for about one hour. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 ml) and washed with phosphate buffer, pH 7.0 (40 ml), water (40 ml) and brine (40 ml). The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The precipitate was collected, and further purified by flash chromatography to yield 8.49 grams (92%) of the title intermediate as a semi-solid. NMR was consistent with the title structure.

Preparation of 4-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-2,2-dimethylbutanol

\[
\text{HO} \quad \text{H}_3\text{C} \quad \text{CH}_3 \quad \text{H} \quad \text{BoC}
\]

A solution of 3,3-dimethyl-1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)pyrrolidin-2-one (3.35 g, 15.7 mmol) in absolute ethanol under a nitrogen atmosphere was treated with sodium borohydride (1.79 g, 47.1 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about 24 hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous fraction was back extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was further purified by chromatography to yield 3.17 grams (93%) of the title intermediate as a clear oil. mp 75.5-76.5°C.

Preparation of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)-1-methoxybut-2-yne
A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxyloxy)-but-2-ynyl alcohol (1.07 g, 3.92 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (26 ml) was cooled to -40°C and then treated with potassium t-butoxide (4.31 ml of a 1 M solution in tetrahydrofuran, 4.31 mmol). The resulting dark orange solution was stirred for thirty minutes, cooled to -78°C and treated with methyl iodide (0.49 ml, 7.84 mmol). The reaction was warmed to 0°C and stirred for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was then partitioned between methylene chloride and saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by high performance liquid chromatography to yield 790 mg (70%) as a clear oil.

Preparation of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxyloxy)-but-2-ynyl bromide

A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxyloxy)-but-2-ynyl alcohol (8.9 g, 32.6 mmol) in diethyl ether (109 ml) was treated with triphenylphosphine (11.1 g, 42.4 mmol) and carbon tetrabromide (14.1 g, 42.4 mmol). The cloudy solution was stirred at ambient temperature for about 14 hours. The precipitate was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated. The desired title intermediate was purified from the filtrate by flash chromatography. Yield 9.83 grams (90%) as a clear oil.
Elemental analysis and NMR were consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of N-methyl-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)but-2-ynyl amine

A solution of aminomethane (89 ml of a 2 M solution in tetrahydrofuran, 178 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)but-2-ynyl bromide (6.0 g, 17.8 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (89 ml). The cloudy reaction mixture was stirred for about fifteen minutes, at which time no starting material remained, as determined by thin layer chromatography. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was taken up in methylene chloride and washed with 1 M potassium carbonate. The aqueous phase was back-extracted thrice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The resulting oil was further purified by flash chromatography, affording 4.24 grams (83%) of the title intermediate as a yellow oil. NMR was consistent with the title structure.

Preparation of N-benzyl-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)but-2-ynyl amine
A solution of benzylamine (0.98 ml, 8.93 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl oxy)but-2-ynyl bromide (300 mg, 0.893 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (4.5 ml). The cloudy reaction mixture was stirred for about twenty hours, at which time no starting material remained, as determined by thin layer chromatography. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was taken up in methylene chloride and washed with 1 M potassium carbonate. The aqueous phase was back extracted with methylene chloride (2 x 15 ml). The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The resulting oil was further purified by flash chromatography, affording 200 mg (62%) of the title intermediate.

Preparation of N-isopropyl-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl oxy)but-2-ynyl amine

A solution of isopropylamine (0.25 ml, 2.9 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl oxy)but-2-ynyl bromide (97 mg, 0.29 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (1.4 ml). The cloudy reaction mixture was stirred for about twenty hours, at which time no starting material remained, as determined by thin layer chromatography. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was taken up in methylene chloride and washed with 1 M potassium carbonate. The aqueous phase was back extracted with methylene chloride (2 x 5 ml). The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The resulting oil was further purified by flash chromatography, affording 78 milligrams (86%) of the title intermediate. NMR was consistent with the title structure.
Preparation of N-cyclopropyl-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxoxy)but-2-ynyl amine

A solution of cyclopropylamine (1.10 ml, 15.8 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxoxy)but-2-ynyl bromide (530 mg, 1.58 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (8 ml). The cloudy reaction mixture was stirred for about thirty minutes. The reaction mixture was then cooled to 0°C, and held at this temperature for about four hours, at which time no starting material remained, as determined by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride (50 ml) and washed with 1 M potassium carbonate (10 ml). The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The resulting oil was further purified by preparative high performance liquid chromatography, affording 362 mg (73%) of the title intermediate as a clear oil.

Preparation of 4,5-dihydro-2-(2-fluoro-5-bromophenyl)oxazole

A solution of N-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-bromo-2-fluorobenzamide (956 mg, 3.65 mmol) in methylene chloride was treated with thionyl chloride (0.35 ml, 4.75 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature as the progress of the reaction was monitored by
thin layer chromatography. After one hour of stirring, no starting material was visible. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and the reaction was quenched by the addition of water and 1 N sodium hydroxide. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated to a white solid. The solid was dissolved in 80% aqueous acetonitrile (25 ml) and an excess of potassium carbonate was added. The resulting mixture was stirred for about 72 hours at ambient temperature, heated to reflux for thirty hours, and worked up as before. The desired title product was then further purified by liquid chromatography, yielding 260 mg as a yellow oil.

Preparation of N,N-dimethyl-2-fluoro-5-bromobenzamide

![Chemical Structure]

A suspension of 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzoic acid (680 mg, 3.10 mmol) in methylene chloride (20 ml) was treated with oxalyl chloride (0.35 ml, 4.04 mmol), followed by four drops of N,N-dimethylformamide. The resulting clear solution was stirred for about three hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was redissolved in methylene chloride and treated with dimethylamine (4.6 ml, 9.3 mmol). Stirring was continued for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 632 mg (83%) as a clear oil.

Preparation of 1-methoxy-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butane
A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy]butanol (897 mg, 3.24 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (22 ml) was cooled to -40°C and then treated with potassium t-butoxide (3.56 ml of a 1 M solution in tetrahydrofuran, 3.56 mmol). The resulting orange solution was stirred for thirty minutes, cooled to -78°C and treated with methyl iodide (0.40 ml, 6.48 mmol). The reaction was warmed to 0°C and stirred for 1.5 hours. The reaction mixture was then partitioned between methylene chloride and saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate, and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by high performance liquid chromatography to yield 687 mg (73%) as a clear oil.

Preparation of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy]butyl bromide

A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy]butanol (7.03 g, 26.3 mmol) in diethyl ether (88 ml) was treated with triphenylphosphine (8.97 g, 34.2 mmol) and carbon tetrabromide (11.3 g, 34.2 mmol). The cloudy solution was stirred at ambient temperature for about 30 hours. The precipitate was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated. The desired title intermediate was purified from the filtrate by bulb to bulb distillation. Yield 8.68 grams (86%) as a clear oil.
Elemental analysis and NMR were consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of N,N-dimethyl-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butylamine

\[
\text{\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (A) at (0,0) {F};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (B) at (0,-1) {Br};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (C) at (1,0) {O};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (D) at (2,0) {N};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (E) at (3,0) {\text{CH}_3};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (F) at (3,-1) {\text{CH}_3};
\end{tikzpicture}}
\]

Diethylamine (17.6 ml, 35.3 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butyl bromide (1.2 g, 3.53 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (18 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about 18 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by high performance liquid chromatography. Yield: 842 mg (79%) as a pale yellow oil.

Preparation of N-ethyl-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butylamine

\[
\text{\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (A) at (0,0) {F};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (B) at (0,-1) {Br};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (C) at (1,0) {O};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (D) at (2,0) {N};
  \node[circle,draw,inner sep=2pt] (E) at (3,0) {\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3};
\end{tikzpicture}}
\]

A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butyl bromide (500 mg, 1.47 mmol) in acetone (7.3 ml) was treated with sodium iodide (242 mg, 1.6 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature. After 1.5 hours, the sodium bromide was removed by
filtration, and the filtrate concentrated. The residue was treated with a tetrahydrofuran solution of ethylamine (11 ml, 22.0 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred for about 17 hours at ambient temperature. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and washed with 25 mM phosphate buffer and brine. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by radial chromatography. Yield: 337 mg (75%) as a yellow oil. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of N-isopropyl-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxy)butylamine

![Chemical Structure]

A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxy)butyl bromide (1.2 g, 3.53 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (18 ml) was treated with sodium iodide (484 mg, 3.2 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature. After 1.5 hours, the sodium bromide was removed by filtration, and the filtrate concentrated. The residue was treated with a tetrahydrofuran solution of isopropylamine (3.01 ml, 35.3 mmol). The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The resulting mixture was stirred for about 18 hours at ambient temperature, after which time an additional 10 equivalents of isopropylamine was added to drive the reaction. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and washed with 25 mM phosphate buffer and brine. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 517 mg (46%) as a yellow oil.

Analysis for C₁₄H₂₁BrFNO:
Theory: C, 52.84; H, 6.65; N, 4.40.
Found: C, 52.87; H, 6.77; N, 4.64.

Preparation of N-(t-butyl)-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butylamine

A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butyl bromide (400 mg, 1.18 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (6 ml) was treated with sodium iodide (242 mg, 1.6 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature. After 1.5 hours, the sodium bromide was removed by filtration, and the filtrate concentrated. The residue was treated with a tetrahydrofuran solution of tert-butylamine (1.24 ml, 11.8 mmol). The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The resulting mixture was stirred for about 19 hours at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with methylene chloride, and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by radial chromatography. Yield: 261 mg (66%) as a yellow oil. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of 1-(piperidin-1-yl)-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butane

...
A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butyl bromide (520 mg, 1.53 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (8 ml) was treated with piperidine (1.5 ml, 15.3 mmol). The resulting reaction mixture was stirred for about 24 hours. The reaction mixture was then diluted with methylene chloride and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by radial chromatography. Yield: 399 mg (76%).

Preparation of 1-(morpholin-4-yl)-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butane

A solution of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)butyl bromide (550 mg, 1.62 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (8 ml) was treated with morpholine (1.4 ml, 16.2 mmol). The resulting reaction mixture was stirred for about 72 hours. The reaction mixture was then diluted with methylene chloride and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by radial chromatography. Yield: 446 mg (79%) as a clear oil.

Preparation of 1-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl]oxy]-3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propane
An amount of 3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propyl bromide (180 mg, 0.588 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (1.5 ml) in a 10 ml flask under a nitrogen atmosphere. Sodium iodide (176 mg, 1.18 mmol) was added at ambient temperature, and the resulting mixture was stirred for ten minutes. The reaction mixture was treated with 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl alcohol (121 mg, 0.588 mmol), delivered as a solution in 0.5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. To this mixture was then added sodium hydride (60%, 35 mg, 0.882 mmol) and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for three hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title product was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 0.115 g. MS (M+) 430.

Analysis for C_{20}H_{29}BrFNO_3:

Theory:  C, 55.82; H, 6.79; N, 3.26.
Found:    C, 55.70; H, 6.59; N, 3.04.

Preparation of 1-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl]oxy]-3-(piperidin-3-yl)propane
In a 100 ml round bottom flask, 1-[2-fluoro-5-
bromobenzyl]oxy]-3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propane (0.395 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (4.2 ml). The solution was cooled to 0°C and trifluoroacetic acid (0.8 ml) was slowly added dropwise. The resulting mixture was stirred at 0°C for thirty minutes, followed by stirring at ambient temperature for thirty minutes. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 210 mg as a clear yellow oil.

Analysis for C_{16}H_{21}BrFNO:

Theory: C, 54.54; H, 6.41; N, 4.24.

Found: C, 54.32; H, 6.41 N, 4.34.

Preparation of 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide

In a 250 ml round bottom flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl alcohol (5.85 g, 28.5 mmol) was dissolved in diethyl ether (125 ml). To this solution triphenylphosphine (9.73 g, 37.1 mmol) and carbon tetrabromide (12.30 g, 37.1 mmol) were added. The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about three hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The mixture was then stirred at ambient temperature for about 19 additional hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and washed with cold diethyl ether. The filtrate was evaporated, yielding a light yellow oil. The oil was further purified by
chromatography on a silica gel with hexanes. The desired fractions
were purified by evaporation to yield 5.8 grams of the desired title
intermediate. The material slowly crystallized upon standing.
Analysis for C₇H₆Br₂F:

| Found  | C, 31.18; H, 1.91. |

Preparation of N,N-dimethyl-3-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)propylamine

![Structural formula]

In a 10 ml round bottom flask, under a nitrogen
atmosphere, 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (245 mg, 0.914 mmol) was
dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (2.0 ml). To this solution sodium
iodide (137 mg, 0.914 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was
stirred at ambient temperature for thirty minutes. In another 10 ml
flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 3-(N,N-dimethylylamino)propanol
(0.162 ml, 1.37 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (2.0 ml).
Sodium hydride (60%, 62 mg, 1.55 mmol) was then added to the propanol
solution. After thirty minutes of stirring, the benzyl bromide, sodium
iodide solution was added to the propanol mixture. Some frothing
occurred, but quickly dissipated. The resulting mixture was stirred for
two hours at ambient temperature. The progress of the reaction was
monitored by thin layer chromatography.

The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M
potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was
back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were
combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in
vacuo. The desired intermediate was further purified by liquid
chromatography to yield 182 mg (69%) of the title intermediate. NMR,
IR, and MS were consistent with the proposed title structure.
Analysis for C₁₂H₁₇BrFNO:
Theory: C, 49.67; H, 5.91; N, 4.83.
Found: C, 49.46; H, 5.92; N, 4.99.

Preparation of 2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxyloxy)-1-methoxyethane

In a 10 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-methoxyethanol (0.125 ml, 1.60 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (2 ml). Sodium hydride (60%, 72 mg, 1.81 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about thirty minutes. To this reaction mixture was added 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (285 mg, 1.06 mmol) as a solution in N,N-dimethylformamide (2 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for two hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and diethyl ether. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with diethyl ether. The organic fractions were combined, washed with brine (7 X) and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was used without further purification. Yield: 165 mg

Preparation of 2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylxyloxy)-(N,N-dimethyl)ethylamine
In a 50 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-(N,N-dimethylamino)ethanol (1.319 g, 4.92 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (16 ml). Sodium hydride (60%, 335 mg, 8.37 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about twenty minutes. To this reaction mixture was added 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (1.319 g, 4.92 mmol) as a solution in N,N-dimethylformamide (3 ml). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for two hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and diethyl ether. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with diethyl ether. The organic fractions were combined, washed with brine (7 X) and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was used without further purification. Yield: 1.023 g (75%)

Preparation of N,N-dimethyl-2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylamine

In a 50 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (1.264 g, 4.72 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (10 ml). Dimethylamine (8 M in H₂O, 1.77 ml, 14.2 mmol) was added as a solution in methanol (5 ml), and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about two hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The methanol was removed by evaporation. The residue was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and diethyl ether. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with diethyl ether. The organic fractions were combined, washed with brine (7 X) and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents
were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was used without further purification. Yield: 0.987 g

Preparation of 2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzzyloxy)-(N-methyl)ethylamine

In a 50 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzzyloxy)-(N,N-dimethyl)ethylamine (317 mg, 1.15 mmol) was dissolved in dichloroethane (3.5 ml). This solution was cooled to 0°C and ACE • Cl (0.50 ml, 4.59 mmol) was added. The resulting mixture was warmed to ambient temperature, then heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature for about three hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. Methanol was added to the reaction mixture and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about three days. The mixture was then heated to reflux for thirty minutes. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was taken up in methanol, heated to reflux for thirty minutes, and the solvents were then removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was used without further purification. Yield: 210 mg

Preparation of N-methyl-2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl amine
In a 25 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzylbromide (755 mg, 2.82 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (10 ml). Methylamine (0.99 ml, 14.1 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for about three hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The solvents were removed by evaporation. The residue was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 0.435 g NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation of N-methyl-3-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl oxy]propylamine

In a 15 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, N,N-dimethyl-3-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl oxy]propylamine (351 mg, 1.21 mmol) was dissolved in dichloroethane (3.5 ml). To this solution ACE • Cl (0.78 ml, 7.26 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to ambient temperature, and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was taken up in methanol and refluxed for 1.5 hours. The methanol solution was then partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Preparation

Preparation of N,N-dimethyl-4-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl]oxy]butylamine

In a 50 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (967 mg, 3.61 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (3.5 ml). To this solution sodium hydride (60%, 245 mg, 6.14 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred for ten minutes. To the reaction mixture 4-(N,N-dimethylamino)butanol (633 mg, 5.41 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred for six hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield 260 mg (24%) NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of N-methyl-4-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl]oxy]butylamine
In a 10 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, N,N-dimethyl-4-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl]oxy]butylamine (215 mg, 0.707 mmol) was dissolved in dichloroethane (2.0 ml). To this solution ACE • Cl (0.305 ml, 2.83 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was heated to reflux. The reaction mixture was refluxed for four hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The mixture was refluxed for an additional 16 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was taken up in methanol. The methanol solution was refluxed for 1.5 hours and the solvents were removed by evaporation. The residue was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield 108 mg. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of 5-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl]oxy]pentyl chloride

\[
\text{\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (F) at (0,0) {F};
  \node (O) at (1,0) {O};
  \node (Br) at (0,-1) {Br};
  \node (Cl) at (2.5,0) {Cl};
  \draw (F) -- (O) -- (Br) -- (Cl);
\end{tikzpicture}}
\]

In a 50 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl alcohol (2.139 g, 10.4 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (25 ml). To this solution sodium hydride (60%, 625 mg, 15.6 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred for twenty minutes. To the reaction mixture 5-chloropentyl bromide was added and the resulting mixture was stirred for two hours at ambient temperature. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer
chromatography. Sodium iodide (3.127 g, 20.9 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for three hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with diethyl ether and washed seven times with brine. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by silica gel. Yield 1.82 g (56%) NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of N,N-dimethyl-5-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl oxy]pentylamine

In a sealable tube, under a nitrogen atmosphere, 5-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl oxy]pentylicloride (0.380 g, 1.23 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml). To this solution sodium iodide (55 mg, 0.368 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was cooled to -78°C. To the reaction mixture dimethylamine (precondensed in anhydrous conditions) was added and the tube was sealed. The mixture was warmed to 85 °C and stirred for eight hours. The mixture was cooled to ambient temperature and stirred for another twelve hours. The mixture was bubbled with nitrogen gas for fifteen minutes to remove excess dimethylamine. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back-extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, and the solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by silica gel.

Preparation
Preparation of N-methyl-5-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzoyloxy]pentylamine

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{F} \\
\text{Br}
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{N-CH}_3
\end{array}
\]

In a 25 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, N,N-dimethyl-5-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzoyloxy]pentylamine (696 mg, 1.87 mmol) was dissolved in dichloroethane (6.0 ml). To this solution ACE • Cl (0.305 ml, 2.83 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was heated to reflux. The reaction mixture was refluxed for twenty hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The mixture was refluxed for an additional 16 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield 248 mg. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Analysis for C_{13}H_{19}BrFNO:

Theory: C, 51.33; H, 6.30; N, 4.60.

Found: C, 51.06; H, 6.12; N, 4.49.

Preparation

Preparation of 1-[2-fluoro-5-bromobenzoyloxy]hexane
In a 100 ml flask, under a nitrogen atmosphere, n-hexanol (1.44 ml, 11.5 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (35 ml). To this solution sodium hydride (60%, 521 mg, 13.0 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred for ten minutes. To the reaction mixture 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (2.054, 7.67 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for six hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate/brine (1/1) and diethyl ether. The organic fraction was washed with brine six times. The organic fraction was dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield 1.32 g. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-3-[2-(2-fluoro-5-

dibromobenzylxoy)ethyl]piperidine

In a 25 ml round bottom flask, 2-[1-(t-
butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]ethyl bromide (1.011 g, 3.46 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (9 ml). Sodium iodide (1.037 g, 6.92
mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for ten minutes. The 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl alcohol (0.852 g, 4.15 mmol) and sodium hydride (60%, 208 mg, 5.19 mmol) were then added and the resulting mixture began to froth and exotherm. After thirty minutes, the solution cooled and solidified. Three milliliters of N,N-dimethylformamide was added and the mass was slurried and stirred for three more hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between brine and diethyl ether. The organic fraction was washed six times with brine, and then dried over sodium sulfate. The desired title product was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 0.540 grams. NMR was consistent with proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of 3-[2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)ethyl]piperidine

![Chemical Structure](image)

In a 1-ml round bottom flask 1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-3-[2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)ethyl]piperidine (0.495 g) was dissolved in methylene chloride (4 ml) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The solution was cooled to 0°C and trifluoroacetic acid (1 ml) was slowly added dropwise. The resulting mixture was stirred for thirty minutes at ambient temperature. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The resulting residue was used as is. Yield: 240 mg. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Preparation

Preparation of 1-hydroxymethyl-2-[2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)methyl]cyclopropane

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{In a 100 ml round bottom flask, 1,2-di(hydroxymethyl)cyclopropane (398 mg, 3.90 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (15 ml). Sodium hydride (60\%, 171 mg, 4.29 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at 0^\circ\text{C for fifteen minutes and then at ambient temperature for fifteen minutes. The reaction solution was cooled to 0^\circ\text{C and 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (348 mg, 1.30 mmol) was then added as a solution in N,N-dimethylformamide. The resulting reaction was stirred at 0^\circ\text{C for 1.5 hours and at ambient temperature for thirty minutes. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between brine and diethyl ether. The organic fraction was washed seven times with brine, and then dried over sodium sulfate. The desired title product was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 0.240 grams (21\%). NMR was consistent with proposed title structure.}}
\end{align*}
\]
In a 50 ml flask 1-hydroxymethyl-2-[2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)methyl]cyclopropane (420 mg, 1.45 mmol) was dissolved in diethyl ether (10 ml) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was treated with triphenylphosphine (495 mg, 1.89 mmol) and carbon tetrabromide (626 mg, 1.89 mmol) stirred at ambient temperature for 17 hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was treated with another 0.19 grams of triphenylphosphine and 0.241 grams of carbon tetrabromide. After four additional hours of stirring at ambient temperature, the solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified from the residue by liquid chromatography. Yield: 0.389 grams (76%) as a clear oil.

Preparation

Preparation of 1-[(N-methylamino)methyl]-2-[2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)methyl]cyclopropane

In a 100 ml flask 1-bromomethyl-2-[2-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)methyl]cyclopropane (344 mg, 0.977 mmol) was dissolved in dry tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The reaction mixture was treated with methylvamine (2M in
tetrahydrofuran, 1.9 ml, 3.91 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for one hour and then additional methylamine (2 ml) was added. The resulting mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature for four hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 0.131 grams (44%) as a light yellow oil. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of cis 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl oxy)but-2-en-1-ol

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{F} \\
\text{Br} \\
\end{array}
\quad \text{O} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\end{array}
\]

In a 500 ml flask, 1,4-dihydroxybut-2-ene (6.13 ml, 74.5 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (150 ml) under a nitrogen atmosphere. Sodium hydride (60%, 2.98 g, 74.5 mmol) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for thirty minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0°C and 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (3.99 g, 14.9 mmol) was added dropwise. The resulting mixture was warmed to ambient temperature and stirred for four hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back-extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were
combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The desired title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 2.145 grams (61%) as a clear oil. NMR and MS were consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of cis 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)but-2-enyl bromide

\[
\text{\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{image}}
\]

In a 100 ml round bottom flask 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)but-2-en-1-ol (2.145 g, 7.80 mmol) was dissolved in diethyl ether under a nitrogen atmosphere. Triphenylphosphine (2.66 g, 10.1 mmol) and then carbon tetrabromide (3.36 g, 10.1 mmol) were added to the reaction mixture. The resulting mixture was stirred for six hours at ambient temperature. A white precipitate formed during the stirring. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The solution was filtered and the filtrate was evaporated to give a thick oil. The desired title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 2.16 g (83%). NMR and MS were consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of cis N-methyl-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl)oxy)but-2-enylamine
In a 250 ml flask 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)but-2-enyl bromide (1.968 g, 5.89 mmol) was dissolved in dry tetrahydrofuran (40 ml). To this solution methylvamine (29.5 ml, 58.9 mmol) was added in one portion and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for five hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was taken up in 1 M potassium carbonate and extracted thrice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined, and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired title intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 1.199 grams (70%). NMR and MS were consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of N-((t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)butylamine

In a 25 ml flask 4-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)butanol was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (15 ml) under a nitrogen atmosphere. The
solution was cooled to -40°C and potassium tert-butoxide (1M in tetrahydrofuran, 2.14 ml, 2.14 mmol) was added slowly. The resulting mixture was stirred at -40°C for thirty minutes. To this reaction mixture was added 2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyl bromide (521 mg, 1.94 mmol), added dropwise as a solution in tetrahydrofuran (3.5 ml). The resulting mixture was slowly warmed to 0°C and stirred at this temperature for two hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was back-extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 335 mg (46%) as a yellow oil.

Analysis for C₁₆H₂₃BrFNO₃:

Theory: C, 51.07; H, 6.16; N, 3.72.

Found: C, 51.18; H, 6.18; N, 3.80.

Preparation

Preparation of 4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)butylamine

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{F} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{Br} & \quad & \\
\end{align*}
\]

In a 250 ml flask, N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-4-(2-fluoro-5-bromobenzyloxy)butylamine (3.5 grams) was dissolved in methylene chloride (60 ml) under a nitrogen atmosphere. Trifluoroacetic acid (15 ml) was added to the solution at 0°C. The resulting mixture was stirred at 0°C for thirty minutes and then at ambient temperature for 15 minutes. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between 1 M potassium carbonate and methylene chloride. The aqueous fraction was
back-extracted with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The desired intermediate was further purified by liquid chromatography. Yield: 1.82 g. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of 4-methyl-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid

Under an argon atmosphere 4-methylindole (0.91 g, 6.96 mmol) was dissolved in 12 ml of tetrahydrofuran. The resulting solution was cooled in a dry ice/acetone bath. To this solution n-butyllithium (1.6 M in hexanes, 4.48 ml, 7.17 mmol) was carefully added and the resulting mixture was stirred for fifty minutes. Carbon dioxide was bubbled through 26 ml of tetrahydrofuran on a dry ice/acetone bath for twenty minutes. The cold carbon dioxide/tetrahydrofuran solution was cannulated into the organolithium solution. Carbon dioxide was bubbled through the reaction mixture, and the resulting mixture was stirred for thirty minutes over the dry ice/acetone bath. The reaction mixture was then stirred at room temperature for ten minutes with continued carbon dioxide bubbling. The carbon dioxide was shut off and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for ninety minutes.

The solvents were removed in vacuo, argon was added to the reaction vessel, which was then rinsed with 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran. The solvents were removed in vacuo. The brown solid was stored overnight at 4°C under an argon atmosphere.

The residue was then dissolved in 12 ml warm tetrahydrofuran and the resulting solution was cooled in a dry ice/acetone bath. To this solution t-butyllithium (1.7 M in pentane, 4.22 ml, 7.17 mmol) was carefully added over fifteen minutes. The resulting mixture was allowed to stir over the dry ice/acetone bath for about seventy minutes. In a separate vessel carbon dioxide was bubbled through 26 ml of tetrahydrofuran cooled over a dry ice/acetone bath. The carbon dioxide/tetrahydrofuran solution was added to the organolithium
solution via cannula. The carbon dioxide was bubbled directly into the reaction mixture for an additional five minutes. The reaction mixture was stirred over dry ice/acetone for one hour and then carbon dioxide was bubbled through the reaction mixture for one half hour. One milliliter of water was added to the reaction mixture and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for several hours.

The reaction mixture was poured into a saturated ammonium chloride solution and extracted twice with diethyl ether. The organic fractions were combined and the solvents were removed in vacuo and recrystallized from water to obtain 0.17 grams of the desired intermediate. The aqueous fraction was acidified by adding 5\% sulfuric acid and stirred for one hour at room temperature. The solids were removed by filtration to yield an additional 0.48 grams of the desired title intermediate.

NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of methyl 4-methyl-1H-indole-2-carboxylate

Under an argon atmosphere 4-methyl-1H-indole-2-carboxylic acid (0.64 g, 3.65 mmol) was dissolved in 20 ml of methanol. Concentrated sulfuric acid (0.5 ml) was added and the resulting mixture was heated to reflux and maintained at this temperature overnight. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. Some solvent was removed in vacuo and the resulting crystals were removed by filtration. The solids were taken up in diethyl ether, washed twice with saturated sodium bicarbonate, and then once with brine. The organic fraction was dried over magnesium sulfate and the solvents were removed in vacuo. Yield: 0.38 grams (55.1\%)

Preparation

Preparation of 2-[4-chlorophenoxy methyl]-3-(2-bromoacetyl)-1H-indole
Under a nitrogen atmosphere bromoacetyl bromide (1.31 ml, 0.015 mol) was added to a slurry of 2-[4-chlorophenoxy methyl]-1H-indole (0.81 g, 0.003 mol), and lithium carbonate (2.22 g, 0.03 mol) in diethyl ether (37.5 ml). The resulting mixture was heated to 55°C. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was partitioned between diethyl ether and a sodium bicarbonate solution. The organic fraction was washed with water and then brine, and then dried over sodium sulfate. The solvents were removed in vacuo. Yield: 1.34 g. NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Preparation

Preparation of 2-[4-chlorophenoxy methyl]-3-[2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole

To a slurry of 2-[4-chlorophenoxy methyl]-3-(2-bromoacetyl)-1H-indole (3 mmol) and lithium carbonate (0.47 g, 6 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) 4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidine (1.01 g, 6 mmol) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 2.5 hours. The progress of the reaction was monitored by thin layer chromatography. The reaction mixture was extracted thrice with 1 N hydrochloric acid. The combined acidic extracts were extracted with ethyl acetate, then basified with sodium carbonate, and then extracted twice with ethyl acetate, and then twice with methylene chloride. The organic fractions were combined and the solvents were removed in vacuo. After triturating with diethyl ether 0.46 grams of the desired product as crystalline material were obtained.

NMR, IR, and UV were consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass FAB for C_{28}H_{35}ClN_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: 480.2418
Found: 480.2411
FDMS 479 (M^+)  
mp 144-145°C
The following Examples were prepared essentially as described in the Schemes and Methods, supra. In the following Examples, unless otherwise noted, NMR was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Example 1
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-(amino)methyl-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 300 (M$^+$).
Analysis for C$_{17}$H$_{17}$ClN$_2$O:

Theory: C, 67.88; H, 5.70; N, 9.31.
Found: C, 67.64; H, 5.86; N, 9.24.

Example 2
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(N,N-dimethylamino)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 328 (M$^+$)
Analysis for C$_{19}$H$_{21}$ClN$_2$O:

Theory: C, 69.40; H, 6.44; N, 8.52.
Found: C, 69.18; H, 6.73; N, 8.54.
Example 3

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(N,N-diethylamino)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\begin{align*}
N(CH_2CH_3)_2 & \\
\text{HCl} & \\
N(CH_3) & \\
\text{CHO} & \\
\text{C} & \\
\text{Cl} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 356 (M+).
Analysis for C_{21}H_{25}ClN_{2}O \cdot \text{HCl}:
Theory: C, 64.12; H, 6.66; N, 7.12.
Found: C, 64.30; H, 6.69; N, 7.18.

Example 4

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(N,N,N-trimethylammonium)methyl]-1H-indole iodide

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_3\text{C} & \\
\text{CH}_3 & \\
\text{CH}_3 & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{I}^{-} & \\
\text{C} & \\
\text{N} & \\
\text{Cl} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 343 (M+).
Analysis for C_{20}H_{24}ClN_{2}O \cdot \text{I}:
Theory: C, 51.03; H, 5.14; N, 5.95.
Found: C, 50.80; H, 4.93; N, 6.00.
Example 5

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(benzylamino)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 390 (M+).
Analysis for C\textsubscript{24}H\textsubscript{23}ClN\textsubscript{2}O • HCl:

Theory: C, 67.45; H, 5.66; N, 6.56.
Found: C, 67.63; H, 5.70; N, 6.60.

Example 6

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(2-phenylethlamino)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride
NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 404 (M+).
Analysis for C_{25}H_{25}ClN_{2}O • HCl:
Theory: C, 68.03; H, 5.94; N, 6.35.
Found: C, 68.27; H, 5.99; N, 6.60.

Example 7

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(N-methyl-N-
butylamino)methyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
&\text{IR was consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
&\text{FDMS 370 (M+).} \\
&\text{Analysis for C}_{22}H_{27}ClN_{2}O:} \\
&\text{Theory: C, 71.24; H, 7.34; N, 7.55.} \\
&\text{Found: C, 71.19; H, 7.48; N, 7.39.}
\end{align*}
\]

Example 8

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(N-methyl-N-
benzylamino)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride
NMR, IR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 404 (M+).

Analysis for $C_{26}H_{25}ClN_2O \cdot HCl$:

Theory:  C, 68.03; H, 5.94; N, 6.35.
Found:  C, 68.30; H, 5.92; N, 6.45.

Example 9

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[N-methyl-N-(3-N',N'-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 400 (M+1).
Analysis for $C_{23}H_{30}ClN_3O$:

Theory:  C, 69.07; H, 7.56; N, 10.51.
Found:  C, 69.33; H, 7.34; N, 10.41.

Example 10

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[N-methyl-N-[3-(N',N'-dimethylamino)-2,2-dimethylpropyl]amino]methyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 414 (M+1)
Analysis for C₂₄H₃₂ClN₃O:
   Theory:    C, 69.93; H, 7.79; N, 10.15.
   Found:    C, 69.67; H, 7.78; N, 10.17.

Example 11

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(pyrrolidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 354 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₁H₂₃ClN₂O・HCl:
   Theory:    C, 64.45; H, 6.18; N, 7.16.
   Found:    C, 64.66; H, 6.33; N, 7.03.

Example 12

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride
NMR, IR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 368 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}O \cdot HCl:

Theory: \( \text{C}, 65.19; \text{H}, 6.46; \text{N}, 6.91. \)
Found: \( \text{C}, 65.46; \text{H}, 6.52; \text{N}, 7.16. \)

Example 13

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(3-methylpiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 382 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{27}ClN_{2}O:

Theory: \( \text{C}, 72.14; \text{H}, 7.11; \text{N}, 7.32. \)
Found: \( \text{C}, 72.38; \text{H}, 7.22; \text{N}, 7.36. \)

Example 14

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 382 (M+).

Analysis for C_{25}H_{27}ClN_{2}O:
Theory: C, 72.14; H, 7.11; N, 7.32.
Found: C, 72.33; H, 7.22; N, 7.47.

**Example 15**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[4-(N,N-dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 411 (M+).
Analysis for C_{24}H_{30}ClN_{3}O:
Theory: C, 69.97; H, 7.34; N, 10.20.
Found: C, 69.74; H, 7.38; N, 10.13.

**Example 16**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]methyl]-1H-indole
FDMS 451 (M+).
Analysis for C_{27}H_{34}ClN_{3}O:

Theory: C, 71.74; H, 7.58; N, 9.30.
Found: C, 71.55; H, 7.44; N, 9.14.

**Example 17**

Preparation of 2-([(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-acetamido-4-phenylpiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

FDMS 501 (M+).
Analysis for C_{30}H_{32}ClN_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 71.77; H, 6.43; N, 8.37.
Found: C, 71.79; H, 6.61; N, 8.52.

**Example 18**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 383 (M⁺).

Analysis for C₂₂H₂₆ClN₅O:
Theory: C, 68.83; H, 6.83; N, 10.95.
Found: C, 68.80; H, 6.71; N, 10.95.

Example 19

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-isopropylpiperazin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 411 (M⁺).
Analysis for C₂₄H₃₀ClN₅O:
Theory: C, 69.97; H, 7.34; N, 10.20.
Found: C, 69.97; H, 7.36; N, 10.02.

Example 20

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-phenylpiperazin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 445 (M+).

Analysis for C$_{27}$H$_{28}$ClN$_3$O:

Theory: C, 72.71; H, 6.33; N, 9.42.

Found: C, 73.00; H, 6.41; N, 9.51.

Example 21

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-benzylpiperazin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 459 (M+).

Exact Mass (FAB+) for C$_{28}$H$_{31}$ClN$_3$O:

Theory: 460.2155.

Found: 460.2145.

Example 22

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-cyclohexylpiperazin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 451 (M+).

Analysis for C_{27}H_{34}ClN_{3}O:

Theory: C, 71.74; H, 7.58; N, 9.30.


Example 23

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[4-(pyrimid-2-yl)piperazin-1-yl]methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl_{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 447 (M+).

Analysis for C_{25}H_{26}ClN_{5}O:

Theory: C, 67.03; H, 5.85; N, 15.63.

Found: C, 67.05; H, 5.93; N, 15.64.

Example 24

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-(morpholin-4-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 370 (M+).

Analysis for C_{21}H_{23}ClN_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 68.01; H, 6.25; N, 7.55.
Found: C, 67.84; H, 6.65; N, 7.25.

**Example 25**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-(tryptolin-2-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl_{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 455 (M+).

Analysis for C_{28}H_{26}ClN_{3}O:

Theory: C, 73.75; H, 5.75; N, 9.21.
Found: C, 73.99; H, 6.00; N, 9.03.

**Example 26**

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[N-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)-N-methylamino)methyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride monohydrate
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

mp 196-197°C.
FDMS 446 (M+).
Analysis for C_{24}H_{29}Cl_{2}N_{3}O \cdot 2\text{HCl} \cdot \text{H}_{2}\text{O}:

Theory: C, 53.64; H, 6.19; N, 7.82.
Found: C, 53.66; H, 5.92; N, 8.10.

Example 27

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[4-(N,N-dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, IR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

mp 105-106°C.
FDMS 445 (M+).
Analysis for C_{24}H_{29}Cl_{2}N_{3}O:

Theory: C, 64.57; H, 6.55; N, 9.41.
Found: C, 64.27; H, 6.48; N, 9.49.

Example 28
Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, IR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 485(M+). mp 106-107°C Analysis for C_{27}H_{33}Cl_{2}N_{3}O:

Theory: C, 66.66; H, 6.84; N, 8.64. Found: C, 66.92; H, 7.04; N, 8.74.

Example 29

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-(2-aminoethyl)-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 314 (M+). Exact Mass (PAB) for C_{18}H_{20}ClN_{2}O:


Example 30
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[(3-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 399 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₃H₃₀ClN₃O:
Theory:  C, 69.07; H, 7.56; N, 10.51.
Found:  C, 69.23; H, 7.79; N, 10.52.

Example 31

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-N-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 413 (M+).
Exact Mass (FAB) for C₂₄H₃₃ClN₃O:
Theory:  414.2312.
Found:  414.2312.
Example 32

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 382 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₃H₂₇ClN₂O:
Theory:  C, 72.14; H, 7.11; N, 7.32.
Found:   C, 72.40; H, 7.26; N, 7.37.

Example 33

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 396 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₄H₂₉ClN₂O:
Theory:  C, 72.62; H, 7.36; N, 7.06.
Found: C, 72.40; H, 7.35; N, 7.25.

Example 34

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-benzylpiperidin-1-yi)ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 472 (M+).
Analysis for C₃₀H₃₃ClN₂O:
  Theory: C, 76.17; H, 7.03; N, 5.92.
  Found: C, 76.37; H, 7.15; N, 5.85.

Example 35

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[4-(N,N-dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yi)ethyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

**Exact Mass (FAB) for C₃₅H₃₃ClN₃O:**

- **Theory:** 426.2312.
- **Found:** 426.2297.

**Example 36**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]ethyl]-1H-indole

![Chemical Structure]

**FDMS 465 (M⁺)**

Analysis for C₃₈H₃₆ClN₃O:

- **Theory:** C, 72.16; H, 7.79; N, 9.02.
- **Found:** C, 72.09; H, 7.69; N, 9.09.

**Example 37**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-cyclohexylpiperazin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 465 (M+).

Analysis for C$_{28}$H$_{36}$ClN$_3$O:
- Theory: C, 72.16; H, 7.79; N, 9.02.
- Found: C, 72.00; H, 7.88; N, 9.05.

**Example 38**

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(N-methyl-N-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl))ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 459 (M+).

Analysis for C$_{25}$H$_{31}$Cl$_2$N$_3$O:
- Found: C, 65.07; H, 6.85; N, 9.06.
Example 39

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[4-(N,N-dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass for C₂₅H₃₂Cl₂N₃O:
- Theory: 460.1922.
- Found: 460.1890.

Example 40

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Exact Mass for C\textsubscript{28}H\textsubscript{36}Cl\textsubscript{2}N\textsubscript{3}O:

Theory: 500.2235.
Found: 500.2215.

**Example 41**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[3-[4-(N,N-dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]propyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl\textsubscript{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

IR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FABMS 440 (M+1)

Analysis for C\textsubscript{26}H\textsubscript{34}ClN\textsubscript{3}O:

Theory: C, 70.97; H, 7.79; N, 9.55.
Found: C, 70.73; H, 7.65; N, 9.44.

**Example 42**

Preparation of (RS) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl\textsubscript{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

IR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FABMS 440 (M+1)

Analysis for C\textsubscript{26}H\textsubscript{34}ClN\textsubscript{3}O:

Theory: C, 70.97; H, 7.79; N, 9.55.
Found: C, 70.73; H, 7.65; N, 9.44.
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass for C₂₄H₃₀ClN₂O:

Theory: 397.2047.
Found: 397.2055.

Example 43

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[[4-(dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]carbonyl]ethyl]-1H-indole

![Chemical Structure]

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 453 (M⁺)
Analysis for C₂₆H₃₂ClN₃O₂:
Found: C, 68.74; H, 7.04; N, 9.38.

Example 44

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[[4-(dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]carbonyl]ethenyl]-1H-indole

![Chemical Structure]
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass (FAB) for C₂₆H₃₁ClN₃O₂:

Theory: 452.2105.

Found: 452.2099.

**Example 46**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-[(3-acetamido)pyrrolidin-1-yl]ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 442 (M+).

Exact Mass FAB (M+1) for C₂₄H₂₉ClN₃O₃:

Theory: 442.1897.

Found: 442.1878.

**Example 47**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 398 (M⁺).
Analysis for C₂₃H₂₇ClN₂O₂:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C, H, N</td>
<td>69.25</td>
<td>69.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.82</td>
<td>6.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.02</td>
<td>6.81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 48**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 412, (M⁺).
Analysis for C₂₄H₂₉ClN₂O₂:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C, H, N</td>
<td>69.80</td>
<td>70.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.08</td>
<td>7.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.78</td>
<td>7.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 49**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(4-benzylpiperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

...
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 488 (M+).

Analysis for C₃₀H₃₃ClN₂O₂:

Theory: C, 73.67; H, 6.80; N, 5.73.
Found: C, 73.52; H, 6.87; N, 5.58.

Example 50

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 442 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₅H₃₂ClN₃O₂:

Theory: C, 67.94; H, 7.30; N, 9.51.
Found: C, 67.73; H, 7.52; N, 9.75.
Example 51

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]ethyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride

\[ \text{NMR (DMSO)} \text{ was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \]

FDMS 481 (M+1).

Analysis for C\textsubscript{28}H\textsubscript{35}ClN\textsubscript{3}O\textsubscript{2} • 2 HCl

Theory:  C, 60.71; H, 6.73; N, 7.59; Cl, 19.20.

Found:  C, 60.86; H, 6.90; N, 7.53; Cl, 19.19.

Example 52

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(4-cyclohexylpiperazin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 482 (M+1).
Analysis for C₂₈H₃₆ClN₃O₂:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>69.76%</td>
<td>70.06%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>7.53%</td>
<td>7.61%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>8.72%</td>
<td>8.46%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 53**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-3-
(piperidin-4-yl)propyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 412 (M+).
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic
methods.
Analysis for C₂₄H₂₉ClN₂O₂:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>69.80%</td>
<td>68.18%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>7.08%</td>
<td>7.87%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>6.78%</td>
<td>6.58%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 54**

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-
[N-methyl-N-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]ethyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 475 (M+).

Analysis for C_{25}H_{31}Cl₂N₂O₂:

Theory:  C, 63.02; H, 6.55; N, 8.82.
Found:   C, 63.43; H, 6.88; N, 8.92.

**Example 55**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 373 (M+).
Analysis for C_{20}H_{20}ClNO₄:

Theory:  C, 64.26; H, 5.39; N, 3.75.
Found:   C, 64.55; H, 5.23; N, 3.79.

**Example 56**
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-carboxy-1H-indole

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 315 (M+).
Analysis for C_{17}H_{14}ClNO_{3}:
Theory: C, 64.67; H, 4.47; N, 4.44.
Found: C, 64.84; H, 4.60; N, 4.54.

Example 57

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[3-dimethylamino-2,3-dimethylpropylamino]carbonyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FAB 426 (M-1).
Analysis for C_{24}H_{30}ClN_{3}O_{2}:
Theory: C, 67.36; H, 7.07; N, 9.82.
Found: C, 67.58; H, 6.79; N, 9.64.

Example 58
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[N,N-bis(3-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]carbonyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{N} \\
\text{N} \\
\text{O} \\
\end{array}
\]

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 483 (M-1).
FABMS 485 (M+1)
Analysis for C₂₇H₃₇ClN₄O₂:

Theory: C, 66.86; H, 7.69; N, 11.55.
Found: C, 66.91; H, 7.54; N, 11.69.

Example 59

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[N-methyl-N-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]carbonyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{N} \\
\text{N} \\
\text{O} \\
\end{array}
\]

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 427 (M+2)
Analysis for C₂₄H₂₈ClN₃O₂:

Theory: C, 67.67; H, 6.63; N, 9.86.
Found: C, 67.38; H, 6.90; N, 9.94.
Example 60

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.}
\]

FDMS 465 (M+).

Analysis for C_{27}H_{32}ClN_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 69.59; H, 6.92; N, 9.02.

Found: C, 69.47; H, 7.00; N, 9.22.

Example 61

Preparation of (RS) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-3-yl)acetyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.}
\]

FDMS 396 (M+).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{25}ClN_{2}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 69.60; H, 6.35; N, 7.06.

Found: C, 69.71; H, 6.28; N, 7.20.
Example 62

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)acetyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 638 (M+)} \\
\text{Analysis for C}_{42}\text{H}_{39}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_2:\n\end{align*}
\]

Theory: \(\text{C, 78.92; H, 6.15; N, 4.38.}\) 
Found: \(\text{C, 78.73; H, 6.15; N, 4.25.}\)

Example 63

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-4-yl)acetyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 397 (M+1)} \\
\text{Analysis for C}_{23}\text{H}_{25}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_2:\n\end{align*}
\]

Theory: \(\text{C, 69.60; H, 6.35; N, 7.06.}\) 
Found: \(\text{C, 69.34; H, 6.43; N, 6.86.}\)
Example 64

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride

![Chemical Structure](image)

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 479 (M+)

Analysis for C_{28}H_{34}ClN_{3}O_{2} • 2HCl:

Theory: C, 60.82; H, 6.56; N, 7.60.
Found: C, 60.67; H, 6.70; N, 7.38.

Example 65

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-(piperidin-3-yl)ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

![Chemical Structure](image)

NMR (CDCl_{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 411 (M+1).

Analysis for C_{24}H_{27}ClN_{2}O_{2}:
Theory: C, 70.15; H, 6.67; N, 6.82.

Found: C, 70.38; H, 6.39; N, 7.02.

Example 66

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. C₄₃H₄₁ClN₂O₂ FDMS 652 (M+).
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic means.

Example 67

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-(piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 411 (M+1)

Analysis for C₂₄H₂₇ClN₂O₂:
Theory: C, 70.15; H, 6.62; N, 6.82.
Found: C, 69.87; H, 6.54; N, 6.79.

**Example 68**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-1-[3-[(1-tritylpiperidin-4-yl)propyl]piperidin-4-yl]]ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

FDMS 779 (M+2)
Analysis for C_{51}H_{56}ClN_{3}O:
Theory: C, 78.69; H, 7.25; N, 5.40.
Found: C, 78.90; H, 7.34; N, 5.60.

**Example 69A**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-1-[3-(piperidin-4-yl)propyl]piperidin-4-yl]]ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl\textsubscript{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FAB 536(M+).
Exact mass FAB (M+1) for C_{32}H_{43}ClN_{3}O_{2}:
Theory: 536.3044.
Found: 536.3044.
Example 69B

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-[1-[3-(1-tritylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]piperidin-4-yl]]ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

FDMS 779 (M+2).

Analysis for C_{51}H_{56}ClN_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 78.69; H, 7.25; N, 5.40.
Found: C, 78.92; H, 7.41; N, 5.27.

Example 69C

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[2-[1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]piperidin-4-yl]]ethyl]carbonyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl_{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 536 (M+1).

Analysis for C_{32}H_{42}ClN_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 71.69; H, 7.90; N, 7.84.
Found: C, 71.45; H, 7.85; N, 7.61.
**Example 70**

Preparation of (RS) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. Exact Mass FAB (M+) for C₃₅H₄₈ClN₄O₂:

- **Theory:** 591.3466.
- **Found:** 591.3476.

**Example 70A**

Preparation of (S) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FABMS 591.3476 (M+).

Analysis for C₃₅H₄₇ClN₄O₂:

Theory:  C, 71.10; H, 8.01; N, 9.48.
Found:    C, 70.82; H, 8.14; N, 9.23.

**Example 70B**

Preparation of (R) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole

![Chemical Structure](image)

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

**Example 71**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-4-yl)propyl]-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass for C₃₅H₄₈ClN₄O₂:
5 Theory: 591.3466.
    Found: 591.3464.

**Example 72**

Preparation of (RS) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propanoyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass for C₃₁H₄₁ClN₃O₂:
15 Theory: 522.2887.
          Found: 522.2905.
Example 73

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-4-yl)propyl]-3-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propanoyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.}
\]

Exact Mass for C\text{\textsubscript{31}H\text{\textsubscript{41}ClN\textsubscript{3}O\textsubscript{2}}} (M+1):

- **Theory:** 522.2887.
- **Found:** 522.2910.

Example 74

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[3-(piperidin-4-yl)propanoyl]-1H-indole
IR and NMR (CDCl₃) were consistent with the desired title structure.

FABMS 522 (M+1)

Analysis for C₃₁H₄₀ClN₃O₂:

Theory: C, 71.31; H, 7.72; N, 8.05.

Found: C, 71.04; H, 7.89; N, 7.78.

Example 75

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-4-yl)propyl]-3-[3-(piperidin-4-yl)propanoyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 522 (M+1)

Analysis for C₃₁H₄₀ClN₃O₂:

Theory: C, 71.31; H, 7.72; N, 8.05.
Example 76

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[3-(dimethylamino)propyl]amino]carbonyl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 413 (M⁺).
Analysis for C₂₃H₂₈ClN₃O₂:
Theory:   C, 66.74; H, 6.82; N, 10.15.
Found:   C, 66.89; H, 6.96; N, 10.11.

Example 77

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[1-hydroxy-1-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]carbonyl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 495 (M⁺).
Analysis for C₂₈H₃₄ClN₃O₃:
Theory:   C, 67.80; H, 6.91; N, 8.47.
Found:   C, 67.86; H, 6.90; N, 8.45.
Example 78

Preparation of 2-[1-methyl-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]indol-3-yl]glyoxylic acid

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 343 (M+)} \\
\text{Analysis for } C_{18}H_{14}ClNO_4: \\
\text{Theory: } C, 62.89; H, 4.11; N, 4.07. \\
\text{Found: } C, 63.15; H, 4.37; N, 3.92.
\end{align*}
\]

Example 79

Preparation of methyl 2-[1-methyl-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]indol-3-yl]glyoxylate

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
\text{Exact Mass FAB (M+1) for } C_{19}H_{17}ClNO_4: \\
\text{Theory: } 358.0846. \\
\text{Found: } 358.0818.
\end{align*}
\]
Example 80

Preparation of phenyl 2-[1-methyl-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]indol-3-yl]glyoxylate

\[
\text{\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{example80structure.png}
\end{center}}
\]

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 419 (M+)

Analysis for C$_{24}$H$_{18}$ClNO$_4$:

Theory: C, 68.66; H, 4.32; N, 3.34.

Found: C, 68.90; H, 4.49; N, 3.33.

Example 81

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-amino-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{\begin{center}
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{example81structure.png}
\end{center}}
\]

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 342 (M+).

Analysis for C$_{18}$H$_{15}$ClN$_2$O$_3$:

Theory: C, 63.07; H, 4.41; N, 8.17.

Found: C, 63.36; H, 4.50; N, 8.18.
Example 82

Preparation of 2-[[4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-methylamino-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 357 (M+1) } \\
\text{Analysis for C}_{19}\text{H}_{17}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_3: } \\
\text{Theory: } \text{C}, 63.96; \text{H}, 4.80; \text{N}, 7.85. \\
\text{Found: } \text{C}, 63.97; \text{H}, 4.83; \text{N}, 7.82.
\end{align*}
\]

Example 83

Preparation of 3-dimethylaminopropyl 2-[1-methyl-2-[[4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]indol-3-yl]glyoxylate

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{25}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}_4: \text{FAB 429 (M+).} \\
\text{Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.}
\end{align*}
\]

Example 84
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[2-(dimethylamino)ethylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
\text{IR was consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 413 (M+).} \\
\text{Analysis for C}_{22}\text{H}_{24}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}_3 \cdot \text{HCl:} \\
\text{Theory: C, 58.67; H, 5.59; N, 9.33.} \\
\text{Found: C, 58.38; H, 5.82; N, 9.48.}
\end{align*}
\]

**Example 85**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[3-(dimethylamino)propylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
\text{Exact Mass FAB (M+1) for C}_{23}\text{H}_{27}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}_3:\ \\
\text{Theory: 428.1741.} \\
\text{Found: 428.1738.}
\end{align*}
\]

**Example 86**
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[3-aminopropylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 399 (M+).
Analysis for C_{21}H_{22}ClN_{3}O_{3}:
Theory: C, 63.08; H, 5.55; N, 10.51.
Found: C, 69.53; H, 6.18; N, 11.70.
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 87

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[3-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)propylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 499 (M+).
mp 175-176°C.
Analysis for C_{26}H_{30}ClN_{3}O_{5}:
Theory: C, 62.46; H, 6.05; N, 8.40.
Example 88

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[2,2-dimethyl-3-(dimethylamino)propylamino]-1,2-ethanediol]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 455 (M⁺).
Analysis for C₃₅H₅₀ClN₃O₃:
Theory: C, 65.85; H, 6.63; N, 9.22.
Found: C, 65.62; H, 6.76; N, 9.12.

Example 89

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[6-(dimethylamino)hexylamino]-1,2-ethanediol]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.

Exact Mass FAB (M+1) for C₃₇H₅₃ClN₃O₃:
Theory: 470.2210.
Example 90

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-2-(dimethylamino)ethylamino]-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 427 (M+), mp 142-143°C.
Analysis for C_{23}H_{26}ClN_{3}O_{3}:
Theory: C, 64.56; H, 6.12; N, 9.82.
Found: C, 64.82; H, 6.32; N, 9.89.

Example 91

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-3-(dimethylamino)propylamino]-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.

Exact Mass FAB (M+1) for C_{24}H_{29}ClN_{3}O_{3}:
Theory: 442.1897.
Example 92

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[(N-methyl-3-(dimethylamino)propylamino)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title product.
FDMS 441 (M+) for C₂₄H₂₉ClN₃O₃:
Theory: 442.1897.
Found: 442.1895.

Example 93

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[bis[3-(dimethylamino)propyl]amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 512 (M+)

Analysis for C₂₈H₃₇ClN₄O₃:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>65.55%</td>
<td>65.85%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>7.27%</td>
<td>7.46%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>10.92%</td>
<td>11.04%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 94**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-benzyl-3-(dimethylamino)propylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 517 (M+).

Analysis for C₃₀H₃₂ClN₃O₃:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>69.55%</td>
<td>69.82%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>6.23%</td>
<td>6.31%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>8.11%</td>
<td>8.13%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 95**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-3-[1-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidin-3-yl]propylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 581 (M⁺).

Analysis for C_{32}H_{40}ClN₃O₅:
Theory: C, 66.02; H, 6.93; N, 7.22.
Found: C, 65.91; H, 7.14; N, 7.08.

Example 96

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(1-methylpiperidin-3-yl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 439 (M⁺).

Analysis for C_{24}H_{26}ClN₃O₃:
Theory: C, 65.52; H, 5.96; N, 9.55.
Found: C, 65.80; H, 5.96; N, 9.56.

Example 97

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-(1-methylpyrrolidin-3-yl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 439 (M+).
Analysis for C_{24}H_{26}ClN_{3}O_{3}:
Theory: C, 65.52; H, 5.96; N, 9.55.
Found: C, 65.54; H, 6.03; N, 9.69.

Example 98

Preparation of (RS) 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[(N-methyl-(1-methylpiperidin-3-yl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR was consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 453 (M+).
Analysis for C_{25}H_{28}ClN_{3}O_{3}:
Found: C, 65.86; H, 6.17; N, 9.29.

Example 99

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[quinuclidin-3-yl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 451 (M+). mp 204-205°C.

Analysis for C_{25}H_{26}ClN_{3}O_{3}:

Theory: C, 66.44; H, 5.80; N, 9.30.
Found: C, 66.37; H, 5.88; N, 9.37.

Example 100

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl_{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 410 (M+).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{23}ClN_{2}O_{3}:

Theory: C, 67.22; H, 5.64; N, 6.82.
Found: C, 67.50; H, 5.81; N, 6.63.

Example 101
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[2-(dimethylaminomethyl)cyclohexylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (DMSO) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 481 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₇H₃₂ClN₃O₃ • HCl:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>C</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory</td>
<td>62.55</td>
<td>6.42</td>
<td>8.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Found</td>
<td>62.56</td>
<td>6.44</td>
<td>8.06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 102

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-methylpiperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 424 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₄H₂₅ClN₂O₃:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>C</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory</td>
<td>67.84</td>
<td>5.93</td>
<td>6.59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example 103

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-benzylpiperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 500 (M+).
Analysis for C₈₀H₃₉Cl₂N₂O₃:
Theory:  C, 71.92; H, 5.83; N, 5.59.
Found:    C, 71.69; H, 5.74; N, 5.38.

Example 104

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-aminocarbonylpiperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 453 (M+). mp 220-221°C.
Analysis for C_{24}H_{24}ClN_{3}O_{4}:
Theory: C, 63.50; H, 5.33; N, 9.26.
Found: C, 63.45; H, 5.50; N, 9.18.

Example 105

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl_{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Exact Mass FAB (M+1) for C_{25}H_{29}ClN_{3}O_{3}:
Theory: 454.1897.
Found: 454.1882.

Example 106

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) and IR were consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 493 (M+)

Analysis for C₂₈H₃₂ClN₃O₃:

Theory:  C, 68.07; H, 6.53; N, 8.51.

Found:   C, 67.97; H, 6.66; N, 8.27.

Example 107

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(3-aminocarbonylpiperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 453.

mp 229-230°C

Analysis for C₂₄H₂₄ClN₃O₄:

Theory:  C, 63.50; H, 5.33; N, 9.26.

Found:   C, 63.53; H, 5.44; N, 9.04.
Example 108

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(piperazin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.}
\end{align*}
\]

FDMS 411 (M+)

mp 168-169°C.

Analysis for C\(_{22}\)H\(_{22}\)ClN\(_3\)O\(_3\):

Theory: C, 64.15; H, 5.38; N, 10.20.

Found: C, 63.95; H, 5.36; N, 10.08.

Example 109

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-isopropylpiperazin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.}
\end{align*}
\]
FDMS 453 (M+).
Analysis for C_{29}H_{28}ClN_{3}O_{3}:
  Found:   C, 65.94; H, 6.48; N, 8.97.

Example 110

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[4-(t-
butoxycarbonyl)piperazin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 511 (M+).
mp 200-201°C
Analysis for C_{27}H_{30}ClN_{3}O_{5}:
  Theory:  C, 63.34; H, 5.91; N, 8.21.
  Found:   C, 63.10; H, 5.80; N, 7.98.

Example 111

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-
cyclohexylpiperazin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
IR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 493 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₉H₃₂Cl₂N₃O₂:
Theory: C, 68.07; H, 6.53; N, 8.50.
Found: C, 67.81; H, 6.60; N, 8.24.

Example 112

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-{4-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)piperazin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride

FDMS 482 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₈H₃₁Cl₂N₄O₂ • 2 HCl:
Theory: C, 56.17; H, 5.98; N, 10.07.
Example 113

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[3-aminoacetylpyrrolidin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.} \\
\text{IR was consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 453 (M+).} \\
\text{Analysis for C}_{24}\text{H}_{25}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}_4:} \\
\text{Theory: } & \text{ C, 63.50; H, 5.33; N, 9.26.} \\
\text{Found: } & \text{ C, 63.75; H, 5.37; N, 9.21.}
\end{align*}
\]

Example 114

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-3-(dimethylamino)propylamino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR (CDCl}_3\text{) was consistent with the proposed title structure.}
\end{align*}
\]
UV was consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 475 (M+). Analysis for C$_{24}$H$_{27}$Cl$_2$N$_3$O$_3$:  
Theory: C, 60.51; H, 5.71; N, 8.82.
Found: C, 60.69; H, 5.80; N, 8.77.

Example 115

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure. C$_{25}$H$_{27}$Cl$_2$N$_3$O$_3$: FDMS 487 (M+). Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 116

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[4-(N,N-dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
UV was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 487, 489 (M⁺).

Analysis for C₂₅H₂₇Cl₂N₃O₃:
Theory: C, 61.48; H, 5.57; N, 8.60.
Found: C, 61.75; H, 5.63; N, 8.59.

Example 117

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[(4-piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 527, 529 (M⁺).
Analysis for C₂₈H₃₁Cl₂N₃O₃:
Theory: C, 63.64; H, 5.91; N, 7.95.
Found: C, 63.82; H, 6.08; N, 7.85.

Example 118

Preparation of 2-[(2-cyano-4-bromophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 511, 513 (M+).

Analysis for C$_{25}$H$_{27}$BrN$_4$O$_3$ • 0.5 H$_2$O:

Theory: C, 57.70; H, 5.42; N, 10.75.
Found: C, 57.56; H, 5.36; N, 10.60.

Exact Mass for C$_{25}$H$_{25}$BrN$_4$O$_3$:

Theory: 511.1332.
Found: 511.1345.

Example 119

Preparation of 2-[(2-cyano-4-bromophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 522, 524 (M+).

Analysis for C$_{26}$H$_{27}$BrN$_4$O$_3$:

Theory: C, 59.66; H, 5.20; N, 10.70.
Found: C, 59.38; H, 5.24; N, 10.49.

Example 120
Preparation of 2-[(2-cyano-4-bromophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 522, 524 (M+).
Analysis for C_{26}H_{27}BrN_{4}O_{3} • 0.5 H_{2}O:
Theory: C, 58.65; H, 5.30; N, 10.52.
Found: C, 58.61; H, 5.21; N, 10.42.
Exact Mass for C_{26}H_{25}BrN_{4}O_{3}:
Theory: 523.1345.
Found: 523.1365.

Example 121

Preparation of 2-[(2-cyano-4-bromophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 563, 565 (M+).
Analysis for C$_{29}$H$_{31}$BrN$_4$O$_3$:

Theory: C, 61.81; H, 5.54; N, 9.94.
Found: C, 61.56; H, 5.62; N, 9.91.

Example 122

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-ethyl-3-[2-(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 467.

Analysis for C$_{26}$H$_{30}$ClN$_3$O$_3$:

Theory: C, 66.73; H, 6.46; N, 8.98.
Found: C, 66.88; H, 6.57; N, 8.90.

Example 123

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-ethyl-3-[2-[N-methyl-(1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 467.

Analysis for C_{26}H_{30}ClN_{3}O_{3}:

Theory: C, 66.73; H, 6.46; N, 8.98.

Found: C, 66.90; H, 6.70; N, 9.03.

**Example 124**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-benzyl-3-[2-(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

![Chemical Structure]

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 529.

Analysis for C_{31}H_{32}ClN_{3}O_{3}:

Theory: C, 70.24; H, 6.08; N, 7.93.

Found: C, 70.26; H, 6.18; N, 7.73.

**Example 125**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-(2-piperidin-1-yethyl)-3-[2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass FAB for C$_{34}$H$_{44}$ClN$_4$O$_5$:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>591.3102</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Found</td>
<td>591.3100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 126

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[piperidin-1-ylmethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.
Example 127

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-methylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-[piperidin-1-ylmethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 128

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-ethyl-3-[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 425 (M+). mp 115-116°C.

Analysis for C_{25}H_{32}ClN_{3}O:

Theory: C, 70.49; H, 7.57; N, 9.86.

Found: C, 70.70; H, 7.67; N, 9.80.

Example 129

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxymethyl)-1-benzyl-3-[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 488 (M+). mp 127-128°C.

Analysis for C_{30}H_{34}ClN_{3}O:

Theory: C, 73.83; H, 7.02; N, 8.61.

Found: C, 73.77; H, 7.21; N, 8.66.

Example 130

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-{2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl}-3-[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass FAB for C₃₀H₄₂ClN₄O:

Theory: 509.3047.
Found 509.3018.

Example 131

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-1-yl)propyl]-3-[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole trihydrochloride

NMR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 523 (M+1).  
mp 240-242°C.  
Analysis for C₃₁H₄₃Cl₅N₄O • 3 HCl:  
Theory: C, 58.86; H, 7.33; N, 8.86.  
Found: C, 58.66; H, 7.09; N, 8.77.

Example 132

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-3-
[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

C₃₁H₄₃Cl₅N₄O: FDMS 522 (M+)

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 133

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-ethyl-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-
yl)piperidin-1-yl]methyl]-1H-indole
NMR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 465 (M+). mp 130-131°C.

Analysis for C_{28}H_{36}ClN_{3}O:
Theory: C, 72.16; H, 7.79; N, 9.02.
Found: C, 72.12; H, 7.78; N, 8.86.

Example 134

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-benzyl-3-[(4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 527 (M+). mp 153-154°C.
Analysis for C_{33}H_{38}ClN_{3}O:
Theory: C, 75.05; H, 7.25; N, 7.96.
Found: C, 75.25; H, 7.40; N, 8.08.

Example 135
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-3-
[(4-piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]methyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 548 (M+)
mp 102-103°C.
Analysis for C₃₃H₄₅ClN₄O:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C (wt%)</td>
<td>72.17</td>
<td>72.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H (wt%)</td>
<td>8.26</td>
<td>8.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N (wt%)</td>
<td>10.20</td>
<td>10.17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 136**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-
indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 368 (M+). FAB 369 (M+1).
Analysis for C₂₂H₂₅ClN₂O:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C (wt%)</td>
<td>71.63</td>
<td>71.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H (wt%)</td>
<td>6.83</td>
<td>6.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N (wt%)</td>
<td>7.59</td>
<td>7.59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Found: C, 71.93; H, 7.28; N, 7.22.
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 137

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[2-(piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 368 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₂H₂₅ClN₂O:
Theory: C, 71.63; H, 6.83; N, 7.59.
Found: C, 71.66; H, 6.86; N, 7.87.

Example 138

Preparation of 2-[(phenylthio)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 364 (M+).

Analysis for C₂₃H₂₈N₂S:
Theory:  C, 75.78; H, 7.75; N, 7.69.
Found:   C, 75.70; H, 7.73; N, 7.86.

**Example 139**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 140**
Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(1-methylpiperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole

NMR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. mp 97-98°C.
Analysis for C_{24}H_{29}ClN_{2}O:
  Theory:  C, 72.62; H, 7.36; N, 7.06.
  Found:   C, 72.59; H, 7.48; N, 7.14.

**Example 141**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-4-yl)propyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

C_{23}H_{27}ClN_{2}O: FDMS 382 (M⁺)
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 142**

Preparation of 2-[2-(4-chlorophenyl)ethyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

![Chemical structure](image)

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 366 (M⁺).

Analysis for C₂₃H₂₇ClN₂ · HCl:

- **Theory:** C, 68.48; H, 7.00; N, 6.94.
- **Found:** C, 68.26; H, 6.87; N, 6.75.

**Example 143**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenylamino)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

![Chemical structure](image)

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 367 (M⁺). mp 169°C.
Example 146

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenylamino)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 401, 403 (M+). mp 147-148°C.

Example 147

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenylamino)methyl]-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 353, 354 (M+). mp 135°C.
Analysis for C_{21}H_{24}ClN_{3}:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory:</td>
<td>C, 71.27; H, 6.84; N, 11.87.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Found:</td>
<td>C, 71.90; H, 7.17; N, 12.02.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 148**

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenylamino)methyl]-1-methyl-3-
[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

[NMR (CDCl_3) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 401 (M+),
mp 147-148°C.
Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}Cl_2N_3:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory:</td>
<td>C, 65.47; H, 6.26; N, 10.44.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Found:</td>
<td>C, 65.48; H, 6.30; N, 10.59.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 149**

Preparation of 2-[(cyclohexylamino)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-
yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 339 (M+).
mp 162-164°C.

Analysis for C_{22}H_{33}N_3:
Theory: C, 77.83; H, 9.80; N, 12.38.
Found: C, 75.98; H, 9.11; N, 12.67.

Exact Mass FAB for C_{22}H_{34}N_3:
Theory: 340.2753.
Found: 340.2770.

Example 150

Preparation of 2-[(cyclohexylmethylamino)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 354, 390 (M+). mp 159-161°C.
Analysis for C_{23}H_{35}N_3•2HCl:
Theory: C, 64.78; H, 8.75; N, 9.85.
Found: C, 64.62; H, 8.82; N, 9.65.

Example 151

Preparation of 2-[(naphth-2-ylamino)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃), IR, and UV were consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 383 (M+).

mp 144°C.

Analysis for C₂₆H₂₉N₃:

Theory:  C, 81.42; H, 7.62; N, 10.96.

Found:   C, 81.26; H, 7.49; N, 10.89.

Example 152

Preparation of 2-[[N-acetyl-N-(cyclohexylmethyl)amino]methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 395 (M+).

Analysis for C₂₅H₃₇N₃O • HCl:

Theory:  C, 69.50; H, 8.87; N, 9.73.

Found:   C, 68.87; H, 9.29; N, 9.30.

Exact Mass FAB for C₂₅H₃₈N₃O:

Theory:  396.3015

Found:   396.3020
Example 153

Preparation of 2-[[N-acetyl-N-(benzyl)amino]methyl]-1-methyl-3-
([(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\text{NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.}
\]

FDMS 389 (M+). mp 148-150°C.

Analysis for C_{23}H_{31}N_{3}O \cdot \text{HCl}:

- Theory: C, 70.49; H, 7.57; N, 9.86.
- Found: C, 70.21; H, 7.40; N, 9.73.

Example 154

Preparation of 2-[((3-chlorophenyl)amino)carbonyl]-1-methyl-3-
([(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.}
\]

FDMS 381, 383 (M+). mp 137-138°C.

Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}ClN_{3}O:

- Theory: C, 69.19; H, 6.33; N, 11.00.
Example 155

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenyl)amino]carbonyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 417 (M+). mp 180-182°C.

Analysis for C_{22}H_{23}Cl_{2}N_{3}O:
Theory: C, 63.47; H, 5.57; N, 10.09.
Found: C, 63.27; H, 5.65; N, 10.18.

Example 156

Preparation of 2-[[cyclohexyl]amino]carbonyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 353 (M+). mp 180°C.
Exact Mass FAB for C_{22}H_{32}N_{3}O:
Theory: 354.2545.
Found: 354.2543.

Example 157
Preparation of 2-[[cyclohexylmethyl]amino][carbonyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{CH}_3
\]
\[
\text{C}_3\text{N}
\]
\[
\text{N}
\]
\[
\text{CH}_3
\]

NMR (CDCl\textsubscript{3}), IR, and UV were consistent with the proposed title structure. 

mp 126°C.

Analysis for C\textsubscript{23}H\textsubscript{33}N\textsubscript{3}O:

Theory: C, 75.16; H, 9.05; N, 11.43.

Found: C, 75.09; H, 9.03; N, 11.25.

Example 158

Preparation of 2-[[(naphth-2-yl)amino][carbonyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{CH}_3
\]
\[
\text{N}
\]
\[
\text{N}
\]

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. 

FDMS 397 (M\textsuperscript{+}). mp 187°C.

Analysis for C\textsubscript{26}H\textsubscript{27}N\textsubscript{3}O:

Theory: C, 78.56; H, 6.85; N, 10.57.

Found: C, 78.84; H, 7.02; N, 10.78.

Example 159
Preparation of 2-[phenoxy methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 334 (M+). mp 225°C.
Analysis for C_{22}H_{26}N_{2}O • HCl:
Theory: C, 71.32; H, 7.34; N, 7.55.
Found: C, 71.45; H, 7.44; N, 7.79.

Example 160

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride salt

NMR, IR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 368 (M+). mp 214°C.
Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}O • HCl:
Theory: C, 65.32; H, 6.46; N, 6.91.
Found: C, 65.46; H, 6.52; N, 7.16.

Example 161

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 368 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}O:

Theory: C, 71.63; H, 6.83; N, 7.59.
Found: C, 68.39; H, 6.55; N, 6.16.

**Example 162**

Preparation of 2-[(3-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 368 (M+). mp 222°C.
Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}O • HCl:

Theory: C, 65.19; H, 6.46; N, 6.91.
Found: C, 65.15; H, 6.55; N, 6.95.

**Example 163**

Preparation of 2-[(2-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride
NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 369 (M+).

Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}O\cdot\text{HCl}:
Theory: C, 65.19; H, 6.46; N, 6.91.
Found: C, 65.48; H, 6.65; N, 6.98.

Example 164

Preparation of 2-[(4-fluorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (CDCl_{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 352 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}F_{2}N_{2}O\cdot\text{HCl}:
Theory: C, 67.94; H, 6.74; N, 7.20.
Found: C, 67.74; H, 6.77; N, 7.16.

Example 165

Preparation of 2-[(3-fluorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride
NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 352 (M$^+$).

Analysis for C$_{22}$H$_{25}$FN$_2$O • HCl:

Theory: C, 67.94; H, 6.74; N, 7.20.

Found: C, 65.85; H, 6.51; N, 6.68.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 166**

Preparation of 2-[(2-fluorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (CDCl$_3$) was consistent with the proposed title structure. FDMS 352 (M$^+$).

Analysis for C$_{22}$H$_{25}$FN$_2$O • HCl:

Theory: C, 67.94; H, 6.74; N, 7.20.

Found: C, 67.67; H, 6.63; N, 7.40.

**Example 167**

Preparation of 2-[(4-trifluoromethylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride
NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 402 (M+).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{25}F_{3}N_{2}O \cdot HCl:

Theory: \( C, 62.94 \); \( H, 5.97 \); \( N, 6.38 \).
Found: \( C, 63.51 \); \( H, 6.05 \); \( N, 6.41 \).

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 168

Preparation of 2-[(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 402 (M+).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{25}F_{3}N_{2}O \cdot HCl:

Theory: \( C, 62.94 \); \( H, 5.97 \); \( N, 6.38 \).
Found: \( C, 64.11 \); \( H, 6.07 \); \( N, 6.42 \).

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 169
Preparation of 2-[(2-trifluoromethylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 402 (M+).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{25}F_{3}N_{2}O • HCl:
Theory: C, 62.94; H, 5.97; N, 6.38.
Found: C, 62.89; H, 6.02; N, 6.37.

Example 170

Preparation of 2-[(4-acetylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 376 (M+)

Analysis for C_{24}H_{28}N_{2}O • HCl:
Theory: C, 69.80; H, 7.08; N, 6.78.
Found: C, 69.69; H, 7.27; N, 6.72.

Example 171
Preparation of 2-[[3-acetylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[piperidin-1-yl]methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 376 (M+).} \\
\text{Analysis for } \text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{N}_2\text{O}_2 \cdot \text{HCl:} \\
\text{Theory: } & \text{C, 69.80; H, 7.08; N, 6.78.} \\
\text{Found: } & \text{C, 69.91; H, 7.18; N, 6.81.}
\end{align*}
\]

**Example 172**

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 402 (M+).} \\
\text{Analysis for } \text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{24}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_2\text{O:} \\
\text{Theory: } & \text{C, 60.26; H, 5.75; N, 6.39.} \\
\text{Found: } & \text{C, 61.61; H, 5.69; N, 6.34.} \\
\text{Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.}
\end{align*}
\]

**Example 173**
Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 402 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}O • HCl:

Theory: C, 60.08; H, 5.73; N, 6.37.
Found: C, 60.31; H, 6.00; N, 6.62.

Example 174

Preparation of 2-[(3,5-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 402 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}O • HCl:

Theory: C, 60.08; H, 5.73; N, 6.37.
Found: C, 58.13; H, 5.25; N, 5.99.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.
Example 175

Preparation of 2-[(2,5-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 402 (M+).

Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}O:

Theory:  C, 65.51; H, 6.00; N, 6.95.
Found:   C, 65.71; H, 6.00; N, 6.93.

Example 176

Preparation of 2-[(2,6-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 402 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}O • HCl:

Theory:  C, 60.08; H, 5.73; N, 6.37.
Found:   C, 59.79; H, 5.43; N, 6.11.

Example 177
Preparation of 2-[(3,4-dichlorophenoxo)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 402 (M+).

Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}O \cdot HCl:

- **Theory:** C, 60.08; H, 5.73; N, 6.37.
- **Found:** C, 59.82; H, 5.72; N, 6.21.

**Example 178**

Preparation of 2-[(2,3-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 402 (M+).

Analysis for C_{24}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}O:

- **Theory:** C, 65.51; H, 6.00; N, 6.95.
- **Found:** C, 65.23; H, 5.96; N, 6.82.

**Example 179**
Preparation of 2-[(4-phenylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 410 (M+).
Analysis for C\textsubscript{28}H\textsubscript{30}N\textsubscript{2}O:
  Theory:   C, 81.91; H, 7.36; N, 6.82.
  Found:    C, 80.96; H, 7.34; N, 6.73.
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 180

Preparation of 2-[(3-phenylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 410 (M+).
Analysis for C\textsubscript{28}H\textsubscript{30}N\textsubscript{2}O • HCl:
  Theory:   C, 75.23; H, 6.99; N, 6.27.
  Found:    C, 74.74; H, 7.10; N, 6.23.
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 181**

Preparation of 2-[(2-phenylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 410 (M+).

Analysis for C_{28}H_{30}N_{2}O • HCl:

- **Theory:** C, 75.23; H, 6.99; N, 6.27.
- **Found:** C, 74.03; H, 7.10; N, 6.35.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 182**

Preparation of 2-[(4-methylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
- 232 -

FDMS 348 (M+).
Analysis for C_{23}H_{28}N_{2}O \cdot HCl:

Theory: \quad C, 71.76; H, 7.59; N, 7.28.
Found: \quad C, 70.88; H, 7.70; N, 7.32.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 183

Preparation of 2-[(3-methylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 348 (M+).
Analysis for C_{23}H_{28}N_{2}O \cdot HCl:

Theory: \quad C, 71.76; H, 7.59; N, 7.28.
Found: \quad C, 72.41; H, 7.78; N, 7.29.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 184

Preparation of 2-[(2-methylphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride
NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 348 (M+).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{28}N_{2}O \cdot HCl:

Theory: C, 71.76; H, 7.59; N, 7.28.

Found: C, 71.71; H, 7.54; N, 7.21.

Example 185

Preparation of 2-[(4-methoxyphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

...chemical structure image...

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 364 (M+).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{28}N_{2}O_{2} \cdot HCl:

Theory: C, 68.90; H, 7.29; N, 6.99.

Found: C, 68.68; H, 7.30; N, 7.12.

Example 186

Preparation of 2-[(3-methoxyphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

...chemical structure image...
NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 364 (M+).
Analysis for C_{23}H_{28}N_{2}O_{2} • HCl:

Theory: C, 68.90; H, 7.29; N, 6.99.
Found: C, 69.13; H, 7.38; N, 6.83.

**Example 187**

Preparation of 2-[(2-methoxyphenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 364 (M+).
Analysis for C_{23}H_{28}N_{2}O_{2} • HCl:

Theory: C, 68.90; H, 7.29; N, 6.99.
Found: C, 73.45; H, 7.94; N, 6.92.
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 188**

Preparation of 2-[2-hydroxyethyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
Analysis for C$_{16}$H$_{22}$N$_{2}$O:

Theory: C, 74.38; H, 8.58; N, 10.84.

Found: C, 74.35; H, 8.78; N, 10.96.

Example 189

Preparation of 2-(2-methoxyethyl)-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 272, 273 (M$^+$.)

Analysis for C$_{17}$H$_{24}$N$_{2}$O:

Theory: C, 74.96; H, 8.88; N, 10.28.

Found: C, 73.31; H, 8.86; N, 9.97.

Example 190

Preparation of 2-(2-allyloxyethyl)-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride salt

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 298 (M$^+$).

Analysis for C$_{19}$H$_{26}$N$_{2}$O $\cdot$ HCl:

Theory: C, 68.14; H, 8.13; N, 8.37.
Found: C, 68.30; H, 8.14; N, 8.39.

**Example 191**

Preparation of 2-(benzyloxymethyl)-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

IR, UV, and NMR (CDCl₃) were consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 384 (M⁺)

Analysis for C₂₃H₂₈N₂O · HCl:

Theory: C, 71.76; H, 7.59; N, 7.28.

Found: C, 68.44; H, 7.04; N, 6.36.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 192**

Preparation of 2-[(3-chlorobenzyloxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 382 (M⁺).

Analysis for C₂₃H₂₇ClN₂O · HCl:
- 237 -

Theory: C, 72.14; H, 7.11; N, 7.32.
Found: C, 71.92; H, 7.22; N, 7.43.

Example 193

Preparation of 2-[(2-chlorobenzyloxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 382 (M+), mp 82-83°C.
Analysis for C_{23}H_{27}ClN_{2}O:
Theory: C, 72.14; H, 7.11; N, 7.32.
Found: C, 71.87; H, 7.07; N, 7.36.

Example 194

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorobenzyloxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (CDCl$_3$), IR, and UV were consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 382 (M+)
Analysis for C$_{23}$H$_{27}$ClN$_2$O·HCl:
Theory: C, 65.87; H, 6.73; N, 6.68.
- 238 -

Found: C, 65.54; H, 6.59; N, 6.39.

**Example 195**

Preparation of 2-[(naphth-1-yloxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 384 (M+).
Analysis for C_{26}H_{28}N_{2}O • HCl:
Theory: C, 74.18; H, 6.94; N, 6.65.
Found: C, 74.47; H, 7.05; N, 6.64.

**Example 196**

Preparation of 2-[(naphth-2-yloxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 384 (M+).
Analysis for C_{26}H_{28}N_{2}O • HCl:
- 239 -

- Theory: C, 74.18; H, 6.94; N, 6.65.
- Found: C, 71.44; H, 6.93; N, 6.67.
- Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 197

Preparation of 2-[(thiazol-2-yl)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

\[\text{NMR was consistent with the desired title structure. mp 175-176}^\circ\text{C.}
\]

FDMS 341 (M+).
Analysis for C\text{\textsubscript{19}}H\text{\textsubscript{23}}N\text{\textsubscript{3}}O:\n- Theory: C, 66.83; H, 6.79; N, 12.31.
- Found: C, 66.64; H, 6.82; N, 12.03.

Example 198

Preparation of 2-[(pyrazin-2-yl)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

\[\text{NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.}\]
FDMS 336 (M+). mp 101°C.
Analysis for C_{20}H_{24}N_{4}O:

Theory: C, 71.40; H, 7.19; N, 16.65.
Found: C, 71.44; H, 7.33; N, 16.43.

Example 199

Preparation of 2-[(6-chloropyrazin-2-yl)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 370 (M+). mp 94-96°C.
Analysis for C_{20}H_{23}ClN_{4}O:

Theory: C, 64.77; H, 6.25; N, 15.11.
Found: C, 65.04; H, 6.45; N, 15.21.

Example 200

Preparation of 2-[(pyrimidin-2-yl)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 337 (M+).
mp 123-125°C.
Analysis for C_{20}H_{24}N_{4}O:

Theory: C, 71.40; H, 7.19; N, 16.65.
Found: C, 71.60; H, 7.43; N, 16.59.

Example 201

Preparation of 2-[(quinolin-2-yl)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 385 (M+1).} \\
mp 113°C.
\end{align*}
\]
Analysis for C_{25}H_{27}N_{3}O:

Theory: C, 77.89; H, 7.06; N, 10.90.
Found: C, 77.64; H, 7.00; N, 11.05.

Example 202

Preparation of 2-[(6-chloropyridazin-2-yl)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.}
\end{align*}
\]
FDMS 371 (M+1). mp 138-139°C.
Analysis for C_{20}H_{23}ClN_{4}O:

- **Theory:** C, 64.77; H, 6.25; N, 15.11.
- **Found:** C, 64.84; H, 6.28; N, 15.00.

**Example 203**

Preparation of 2-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphth-1-yl)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 431 (M+).
Analysis for C_{28}H_{37}N_{3}O:

- **Theory:** C, 77.92; H, 8.64; N, 9.74.
- **Found:** C, 75.79; H, 8.74; N, 8.74.

**Example 204**

Preparation of 2-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphth-2-yl)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride hydrate

2HCl
NMR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 431, 432 (M+). mp 202°C.
Analysis for C\textsubscript{28}H\textsubscript{37}N\textsubscript{3}O \cdot 2 \text{HCl} \cdot \text{H}_{2}\text{O}:
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Theory:} & \quad \text{C}, \ 64.36; \ \text{H}, \ 7.91; \ \text{N}, \ 8.04. \\
\text{Found:} & \quad \text{C}, \ 64.73; \ \text{H}, \ 7.50; \ \text{N}, \ 7.99.
\end{align*}
\]

**Example 205**

Preparation of 2-[phenylthiomethyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 350 (M+).} \\
\text{Analysis for C}_{22}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_{2}\text{S} \cdot \text{HCl:} \\
\text{Theory:} \quad \text{C}, \ 68.28; \ \text{H}, \ 7.03; \ \text{N}, \ 7.24. \\
\text{Found:} \quad \text{C}, \ 68.03; \ \text{H}, \ 7.00; \ \text{N}, \ 7.10.
\end{array}
\]

**Example 206**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.} \\
\text{FDMS 384 (M+).}
\end{array}
\]


Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}S • HCl:

Theory: C, 62.70; H, 6.22; N, 6.65.
Found: C, 62.12; H, 6.42; N, 6.22.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 207

Preparation of 2-[(3-chlorophenylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 384 (M+).

Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}S • HCl:

Theory: C, 62.70; H, 6.22; N, 6.65.
Found: C, 62.94; H, 6.23; N, 6.93.

Example 208

Preparation of 2-[(2-chlorophenylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 384 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}S \cdot HCl:
Theory:  C, 62.70; H, 6.22; N, 6.65.
Found:   C, 62.76; H, 6.20; N, 6.67.

**Example 209**

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 418 (M+).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}S \cdot HCl:
Theory:  C, 57.96; H, 5.53; N, 6.15.
Found:   C, 56.61; H, 5.70; N, 6.05.
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 210**

Preparation of 2-[(2,5-dichlorophenylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 418, 420 (M+1).
Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}S \cdot HCl:

Theory: C, 57.96; H, 5.53; N, 6.15.
Found: C, 57.87; H, 5.50; N, 5.99.

**Example 211**

Preparation of 2-[(2,6-dichlorophenylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 417 (M+).

Analysis for C_{22}H_{24}Cl_{2}N_{2}S \cdot HCl:

Theory: C, 57.96; H, 5.53; N, 6.15.
Found: C, 58.16; H, 5.68; N, 6.33.

**Example 212**

Preparation of 2-[(3,4-dichlorophenylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 418, 420 (M+1).
Analysis for C$_{22}$H$_{24}$Cl$_2$N$_2$S • HCl:
Theory: C, 57.96; H, 5.53; N, 6.15.
Found: C, 57.98; H, 5.54; N, 6.16.

Example 213

Preparation of 2-[(cyclohexylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{S} \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{array}
\text{•HCl}
\]

NMR (CDCl$_3$), UV, and IR were consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 356 (M+).
Analysis for C$_{22}$H$_{32}$N$_2$S • HCl:
Theory: C, 67.23; H, 8.46; N, 7.13.
Found: C, 66.28; H, 9.27; N, 7.71.
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 214

Preparation of 2-[(n-propylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{S} \\
\text{CH}_3 \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{array}
\text{HCl}
\]
NMR (CDCl₃), UV, and IR were consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 316 (M+)
Analysis for C₁₉H₂₈N₂S • HCl:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C, %</td>
<td>64.65</td>
<td>64.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H, %</td>
<td>8.28</td>
<td>8.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N, %</td>
<td>7.94</td>
<td>8.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 215**

Preparation of 2-[(benzylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

![Chemical Structure](image)

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 365 (M+).
Analysis for C₂₃H₂₈N₂S • HCl:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C, %</td>
<td>68.89</td>
<td>68.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H, %</td>
<td>7.29</td>
<td>7.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N, %</td>
<td>6.99</td>
<td>7.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 216**

Preparation of 2-[(2-phenylethylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

![Chemical Structure](image)

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Example 217

Preparation of 2-[(naphth-2-ylthio)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃), UV, and IR were consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 400 (M+)

Analysis for C₂₈H₂₈N₂S • HCl:

Theory:  C, 71.45; H, 6.69; N, 6.41.

Found:  C, 69.59; H, 6.67; N, 6.21.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 220

Preparation of 2-phenyl-3-(piperidin-1-yl)methyl-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 290 (M+).
Analysis for C_{20}H_{22}N_{2}:

Theory: C, 82.72; H, 7.64; N, 9.65.
Found: C, 82.97; H, 7.74; N, 9.81.

Example 221

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-phenyl-3-(piperidin-1-yl)methyl-1H-indole

NMR, UV, and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 304, 305 (M+1).
Analysis for C_{21}H_{24}N_{2}:

Theory: C, 82.85; H, 7.95; N, 9.20.
Found: C, 82.68; H, 7.92; N, 9.40.

Example 222

Preparation of 2-phenyl-1-methyl-3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanediyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl_{3}), IR, and UV were consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 346 (M+)
Analysis for C$_{22}$H$_{22}$N$_2$O$_2$:

Theory: C, 76.28; H, 6.40; N, 8.09.

Found: C, 76.09; H, 6.35; N, 8.09.

**Example 223**

Preparation of 2-phenyl-1-methyl-3-[2-[N-benzyl-N-3-(dimethylaminopropyl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 453 (M$^+$).

Analysis for C$_{29}$H$_{31}$N$_3$O$_2$:


Found: C, 77.06; H, 7.02; N, 9.45.

**Example 224**

Preparation of 2-phenyl-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 389 (M+).

Analysis for C_{24}H_{27}N_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 74.01; H, 6.99; N, 10.79.

Found: C, 73.82; H, 6.98; N, 10.75.

Example 225

Preparation of 1-methyl-3-[2-[N-benzyl]-N-3-(dimethylaminopropyl)amino]-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 377 (M+). FAB 378 (M+1).

Analysis for C_{23}H_{27}N_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 73.18; H, 7.21; N, 11.13.

Found: C, 70.74; H, 7.14; N, 10.75.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 226

Preparation of 1-methyl-3-[2-(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)-1,2-ethanedionyl]-1H-indole
IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 313 (M+1).

Analysis for C\textsubscript{18}H\textsubscript{23}N\textsubscript{3}O\textsubscript{2}:
Theory: C, 68.98; H, 7.40; N, 13.41.
Found: C, 68.97; H, 7.59; N, 13.43.

Example 227

Preparation of 5-chloro-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole hydrochloride

NMR (CDCl\textsubscript{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
mp 177-179°C.
Analysis for C\textsubscript{22}H\textsubscript{23}Cl\textsubscript{3}N\textsubscript{2}O \cdot HCl:
Theory: C, 55.72; H, 5.10; N, 5.91.
Found: C, 55.70; H, 5.21; N, 6.16.

Example 228

Preparation of 5-methoxy-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 432 (M+). mp 119-121°C.

Analysis for C₂₃H₂₆Cl₂N₂O₂:

Theory:  C, 63.74; H, 6.05; N, 6.46.
Found:   C, 63.70; H, 6.12; N, 6.46.

Example 229

Preparation of 5-chloro-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Analysis for C₂₄H₂₈Cl₃N₃O • 2 HCl:

Theory:  C, 52.05; H, 5.46; N, 7.59.
Found:   C, 52.05; H, 5.41; N, 7.56.

Example 230

Preparation of 5-chloro-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
Analysis for C₂₇H₃₂Cl₃N₃O • 2 HCl:

5  Theory:   C, 54.61; H, 5.77; N, 7.08.
      Found:  C, 51.53; H, 6.53; N, 7.57.

Example 231

10 Preparation of 5-bromo-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.
mp 158-160°C.
Analysis for C₂₃H₂₅BrCl₂N₂O:

15  Theory:  C, 55.67; H, 5.08; N, 5.64.
      Found:  C, 55.96; H, 5.28; N, 5.69.

Example 232

20 Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole
IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 271 (M+).

Analysis for $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{14}\text{ClNO}$:
- **Theory:** C, 70.72; H, 5.19; N, 5.15.
- **Found:** C, 70.52; H, 5.26; N, 5.28.

**Example 233**

Preparation of 2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 305.

Analysis for $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{13}\text{Cl}_2\text{NO}$:
- **Theory:** C, 62.76; H, 4.28; N, 4.57.
- **Found:** C, 63.37; H, 4.72; N, 4.37.

**Example 234**

Preparation of 2-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphth-1-yloxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 292 (M+1).

Analysis for C_{20}H_{21}NO:
  Theory:  C, 82.44; H, 7.26; N, 4.81.
  Found:   C, 82.51; H, 7.28; N, 4.80.

Example 235

Preparation of 2-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphth-2-yloxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 291 (M+).

Analysis for C_{20}H_{21}NO:
  Theory:  C, 82.44; H, 7.26; N, 4.81.
  Found:   C, 82.25; H, 6.98; N, 4.95.

Example 236

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-formyl-1-methyl-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 299 (M+).

Analysis for C₁₇H₁₄ClNO₂:

Theory: C, 68.12; H, 4.71; N, 4.67.
Found: C, 67.90; H, 4.93; N, 4.73.

**Example 237**

Preparation of (RS) 1,2-dimethyl-3-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.

Exact Mass for C₁₃H₂₇N₂:

Theory: 271.2174.
Found: 271.2176.

**Example 238**

Preparation of 1-methyl-2-[[2-[(piperidin-1-yl)methyl]phenoxy]methyl]-1H-indole
NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. 
FDMS 335 (M⁺).

Analysis for C₂₂H₂₆N₂O:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C, 79.01; H, 7.84; N, 8.38.</td>
<td>C, 78.78; H, 7.58; N, 8.56.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 239

Preparation of 1-methyl-3-[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]piperidin-1-ylmethyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure. 
FDMS 368 (M⁺).

Analysis for C₂₂H₂₅ClN₂O • HCl:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theory</th>
<th>Found</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C, 65.19; H, 6.46; N, 6.91.</td>
<td>C, 64.93; H, 6.44; N, 6.78.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preparation of 1-methyl-3-[3-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]piperidin-1-ylmethyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {\includegraphics[width=2cm]{structure1.png}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
}\]

NMR (CDCl\textsubscript{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 368 (M+).
Analysis for C\textsubscript{22}H\textsubscript{25}ClN\textsubscript{2}O:

\begin{itemize}
  \item Theory: C, 71.63; H, 6.83; N, 7.59.
  \item Found: C, 63.74; H, 6.54; N, 6.86.
\end{itemize}

Example 241

Preparation of 1-methyl-3-[2-[2-(4-chlorophenoxy)ethyl]piperidin-1-ylmethyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node at (0,0) {\includegraphics[width=2cm]{structure2.png}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}
}\]

NMR (CDCl\textsubscript{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 382 (M+).
Analysis for C\textsubscript{23}H\textsubscript{27}ClN\textsubscript{2}O:
-261-

Theory: C, 65.87; H, 6.73; N, 6.68.
Found: C, 62.05; H, 6.36; N, 6.18.

Example 243

Preparation of ethyl 3-[[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
FDMS 371 (M+)
Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

Example 244

Preparation of (RS) ethyl 2-amino-3-[[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 386.
Analysis for C₂₁H₂₃ClN₂O₃:
Example 245

Preparation of ethyl 2-hydroxyimino-3-[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 400 (M+). mp 165-166°C.
Analysis for C_{21}H_{21}ClN_{2}O_{4} • 0.2 H_{2}O:

Theory: C, 62.36; H, 5.33; N, 6.93.
Found: C, 62.38; H, 5.38; N, 6.87.

Example 246

Preparation of (RS) methyl 2-methoxyimino-3-[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 414 (M+).
mp 106-107°C.
**Example 247**

Preparation of ethyl 2-benzoxyimino-3-[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 490 (M+). mp 96°C.

Analysis for C_{28}H_{27}ClN_{2}O_{4}:

- **Theory:** C, 68.50; H, 5.54; N, 5.71.
- **Found:** C, 68.78; H, 5.67; N, 5.64.

**Example 248**

Preparation of ethyl 2-ethanoyloxyimino-3-[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate
IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 442 (M+).
mp 128-129°C.
Analysis for C_{23}H_{23}ClN_{2}O_{5}:

Theory:  C, 62.37; H, 5.23; N, 6.32.
Found:    C, 62.44; H, 5.40; N, 6.33.

**Example 249**

Preparation of ethyl 2-benzoyloxyimino-3-[2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate

15 IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.
FDMS 504 (M+).
mp 146-147°C
Analysis for C_{28}H_{25}ClN_{2}O_{5}:

Theory:  C, 66.60; H, 4.99; N, 5.55.
Found:    C, 66.88; H, 5.22; N, 5.80.

**Example 250**

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-(4-hydroxy-1-methylpiperidin-4-yl)-1-methyl-1H-indole
NMR, IR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure. FDMS 384 (M+).

Analysis for C_{22}H_{25}ClN_{2}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 68.65; H, 6.55; N, 7.28.
Found: C, 69.46; H, 6.44; N, 7.28.

Single compound of high purity as evidenced by chromatographic methods.

**Example 251**

Preparation of ethyl 2-hydroxyimino-3-[1-methyl-2-phenyl-1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate

NMR (CDCl\textsubscript{3}) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
UV and IR were consistent with the proposed title structure.

FDMS 322 (M+)

mp 141-142°C.

Analysis for C_{19}H_{18}N_{2}O_{3}:

Theory: C, 70.79; H, 5.62; N, 8.69.
Found: C, 70.64; H, 5.89; N, 8.58.
Example 252

Preparation of ethyl 2-hydroxyimino-3-[1H-indol-3-yl]propanoate

IR, NMR, and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.  
FDMS 246 (M+).  
mp 156°C.  
Analysis for C_{13}H_{14}N_{2}O_{3} • 0.3 H_{2}O:  
Found: C, 61.77; H, 5.55; N, 11.07.

Example 253

Preparation of 6-chloro-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

IR and NMR were consistent with the desired title structure.  
FDMS 450 (M+). mp 116.5-118.5°C.  
Analysis for C_{23}H_{25}Cl_{3}N_{2}O:  
Theory: C, 61.14; H, 5.58; N, 6.20.  
Found: C, 61.43; H, 5.67; N, 6.26.
Example 255

Preparation of 7-chloro-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(piperidin-1-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole

IR and NMR were consistent with the desired title structure. mp 134-136°C.

Analysis for C_{23}H_{25}Cl_{3}N_{2}O:

Theory: C, 61.14; H, 5.58; N, 6.20.

Found: C, 61.39; H, 5.71; N, 6.47.

Example 256

Preparation of 4-methyl-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[3-(piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
- 268 -

Exact Mass FAB (M+1) for C_{24}H_{30}ClN_{2}O:
Theory: 397.2047.
Found: 397.2041.

Example 257

Preparation of 5-chloro-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[(4-dimethylaminopiperidin-1-yl)methyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride

Analysis for C_{24}H_{28}Cl_{3}N_{3}O:
Theory: C, 52.05; H, 5.46; N, 7.59.
Found: C, 52.05; H, 5.41; N, 7.56.

Example 258

Preparation of 7-methyl-2-[(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[3-(piperidin-1-yl)propyl]-1H-indole dihydrochloride

NMR (CDCl₃) was consistent with the proposed title structure.
mp 129-131°C.

Analysis for C_{25}H_{30}Cl_{2}N_{2}O:
Theory: C, 67.41; H, 6.79; N, 6.29.
Found: C, 67.34; H, 6.80; N, 6.05.
Example 259

Preparation of 1,2-dimethyl-3-[[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{\[\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{N} \\
\text{\text{H}_3\text{C}} \\
\end{array}\]} \\
\text{\[\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{\text{CH}_3} \\
\end{array}\]}
\]

NMR, IR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 353 (M+)

Analysis for C_{22}H_{31}N_3O:

Theory: C, 74.75; H, 8.84; N, 11.89.

Found: C, 74.76; H, 8.96; N, 11.76.

Example 260

Preparation of 1,2-dimethyl-3-[[4-(N,N-dimethyamino)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole

\[
\text{\[\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{N} \\
\text{\text{H}_3\text{C}} \\
\text{\text{CH}_3} \\
\end{array}\]} \\
\text{\[\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{\text{CH}_3} \\
\end{array}\]}
\]

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

C_{19}H_{27}N_3O: FDMS 313 (M+).

Example 261

Preparation of 2-[[4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[[4-cyclohexyl)piperazin-1-yl]acetyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole
Example 262

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[(4-phenyl)piperazin-1-yl]acetyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.
C_{28}H_{34}ClN_{3}O_{2}: FDMS 480 (M+)

Example 263

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[[4-(N,N-dimethylamino)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1-methyl-1H-indole

NMR was consistent for the desired title structure.
C_{28}H_{28}ClN_{3}O_{2}: FDMS 474 (M+)
NMR, IR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

MSFD 439 (M+)

Analysis for C_{25}H_{39}ClN_{3}O_{2}:

Theory: C, 68.25; H, 6.87; N, 9.55.

Found: C, 67.98; H, 6.81; N, 9.40.

Example 264

Preparation of 2-([(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[[N-methyl-N-(3-N', N'-dimethylaminopropyl)amino]acetyl]-1H-indole

NMR and IR were consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 428 (M+1)

FAB exact mass Calculated for C_{24}H_{31}ClN_{3}O_{2}: 428.2105

Found: 428.2118
Example 265

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-[(4-piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1H-indole

NMR, IR and UV were consistent with the desired title structure.

MSFD 479 (M⁺)
FAB exact mass  Calculated for C₃₈H₃₅ClN₃O₂:  480.2418
               Found                  480.2411

Example 266

Preparation of 2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[2-[(4-piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acetyl]-1-[2-(N,N-dimethylpiperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole iodide
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.
Analysis for C_{36}H_{50}ClN_{4}O_{2} • H_{2}O:

Theory:  C, 57.56; H, 6.90; N, 7.46.
Found:   C, 57.85; H, 6.86; N, 7.04

**Example 267**

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[(2-piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-3-[2-[4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acet-1-yl]-1H-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FABMS 577 (M+1)

Analysis for C_{34}H_{45}ClN_{4}O_{2}:

- Theory: C, 70.75; H, 7.86; N, 9.71
- Found: C, 70.55; H, 7.87; N, 9.52

Example 268

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[2-(methylaminopropyl)dimethylamine]acet-1-yl]-1-[(2-piperidin-3-yl)ethyl]-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.
FABMS 525(M+1)

Exact Mass for C_{36}H_{42}N_{4}O_{2}Cl:
Theory: 525.2996
Found: 525.3003

Example 269

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-[(2-piperidin-3-yl)ethyl]-3-[2-(4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl)acet-1-yl]-1H-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS (M+1)
Analysis for: C$_{34}$H$_{45}$N$_4$O$_2$Cl:

Theory: C, 70.75; H, 7.86; N, 9.71
Found: C, 70.72; H, 7.83; N, 9.63

**Example 270**

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[2-
(methylaminopropyl)dimethylamine]acet-1-yl]-1-[(2-piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-
1H-indole

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

Exact Mass for C$_{36}$H$_{42}$N$_4$O$_4$Cl (M+1):

Theory: 525.2996
Found: 525.3013

**Example 271**

S-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[2-[(4-piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl]acet-
1-yl]-1-[(3-piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FABMS (M+1)

Analysis for: C_{35}H_{47}ClN_{4}O_{2}

Theory:  C, 71.10; H, 8.01; N, 9.48

Found:  C, 70.82; H, 8.14; N, 9.23

Example 272

**R-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[2-(4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl)acet-1-yl]-1-[(3-piperidin-3-yl)propyl]-1H-indole**
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure. Exact Mass for C_{35}H_{48}ClN_{4}O_{2}:

- Theory: 591.3466
- Found: 591.3458

Example 273

cis/trans-2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-(piperidin-1-yl)cyclohex-1-yl)acet-1-yl]-1H-indole

Mixture of cis/trans isomers 1 & 2
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 478 (M+)

Analysis for: C_{29}H_{35}ClN_{2}O_{2}

Theory: C, 72.71; H, 7.36; N, 5.85

Found: C, 72.65; H, 7.61; N, 5.95

Example 274

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-(piperidin-1-yl)cyclohex-1-yl)acet-1-yl]-1H-indole

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 478 (M+)

Analysis for: C_{29}H_{35}ClN_{2}O_{2}

Theory: C, 72.71; H, 7.36; N, 5.85

Found: C, 72.55; H, 7.52; N, 5.67

Example 275

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-3-[2-(4-(piperidin-1-yl)cyclohex-1-yl)acet-1-yl]-1-[(2-piperidin-4-yl)ethyl]-1H-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 575 (M+)

Analysis for: C\textsubscript{35}H\textsubscript{46}ClN\textsubscript{3}O\textsubscript{2}

Theory: C, 72.95; H, 8.05; N, 7.29

Found: C, 72.88; H, 8.23; N, 7.53

**Example 276**

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-(piperidin-1-yl)cyclohex-1-yl)acet-1-yl]-indole
NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FDMS 478 (M+)

Analysis for: C_{28}H_{35}ClN_{2}O_{2}

Theory: C, 72.71; H, 7.36; N, 5.85
Found: C, 72.43; H, 7.42; N, 5.86

Example 277

2-[(4-chlorophenoxy)methyl]-5-fluoro-1-methyl-3-[2-(4-(piperidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl)acet-1-yl]-1H-indole

NMR was consistent with the desired title structure.

FABMS 498 (M+)
Analysis for: C$_{28}$H$_{33}$ClFN$_3$O$_2$

Theory: C, 67.53; H, 6.68; N, 8.44
Found: C, 67.34; H, 6.59; N, 8.58

By substantially following the procedures described above one skilled in the art can prepare the other compounds of Formula I.

The compounds of the present invention bind to receptors specific for neuropeptide Y as well as the closely related neuropeptides. [For a review of neuropeptide Y receptors, see, D. Gehlert, Life Sciences, 55:551-562 (1994); P.A. Hipskind and D.R. Gehlert, Annual Reports in Medicinal Chemistry, 31:1 (1996)]. Receptors for neuropeptide Y and peptide YY have considerable overlap while pancreatic polypeptide appears to have its own distinct set of receptors. Many, but not all, of the effects of neuropeptide Y can be replicated using peptide YY.

Two subtypes of receptors for neuropeptide Y were initially proposed on the basis of the affinity of the 13-36 fragment of neuropeptide Y using a preparation of the sympathetic nervous system. While these are the best established receptors for neuropeptide Y, a substantial body of evidence exists that there are additional receptor subtypes. The best established is a Y-3 receptor that is responsive to neuropeptide Y, but not to peptide YY. Another recently delineated receptor has been described that binds peptide YY with high affinity and neuropeptide Y with lower affinity. While the pharmacology of the feeding response to neuropeptide Y appears to be Y-1 in nature, a separate "feeding receptor" has been proposed. Several of the receptors have been successfully cloned to date. The following paragraphs summarize the available information on the known neuropeptide Y receptor subtypes and their potential role in physiological function.

Y-1 Receptor

The Y-1 receptor is the best characterized receptor for neuropeptide Y. This receptor is generally considered to be postsynaptic and mediates many of the known actions of neuropeptide Y in the periphery. Originally, this receptor was described as having poor
affinity for C-terminal fragments of neuropeptide Y, such as the 13-36 fragment, but interacts with the full length neuropeptide Y and peptide YY with equal affinity. C. Wahlestedt, et al., Regulatory Peptides, 13:307-318 (1986); C. Wahlestedt, et al., NEURONAL MESSENGERS IN VASCULAR FUNCTION, 231-241 (Nobin, et al., eds. 1987). Substitution of the amino acid at position 34 with a proline (Pro34) results in a protein which is specific for the Y-1 receptor. E.K. Potter, et al., European Journal of Pharmacology, 193:15-19 (1991). This tool has been used to establish a role for the Y-1 receptor in a variety of functions. The receptor is thought to be coupled to adenylate cyclase in an inhibitory manner in cerebral cortex, vascular smooth muscle cells, and SK-N-MC cells. [For a review, see, B.J. McDermott, et al., Cardiovascular Research, 27:893-905 (1993)]. This action is prevented by application of pertussis toxin confirming the role of a G-protein coupled receptor. The Y-1 receptor mediates the mobilization of intracellular calcium in a porcine vascular smooth muscle cells and human erythroleukemia cells.

The cloned human Y-1 receptor can couple to either phosphotidylinositol hydrolysis or the inhibition of adenylate cyclase, depending on the type of cell in which the receptor is expressed. H. Herzog, et al., Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences (USA), 89:5794-5798 (1992). The Y-1 receptor has been reported to couple to either second messenger system when studied using tissue preparations or cell lines naturally expressing the receptor. D. Gehlert, supra, at 553. The Y-1 receptor cannot, therefore, be distinguished solely on the basis of coupling to a single second messenger.

Modulation of a Y-1 receptor (either a typical or an atypical Y-1 receptor) is believed to influence multiple physiological conditions, including, but not limited to, obesity or appetite disorder, adult onset diabetes, bulimia nervosa, pheochromocytoma-induced hypertension, subarachnoid hemorrhage, neurogenic vascular hypertrophy, hypertension, anxiety, and anorexia nervosa. PCT Patent Publication WO 96/16542, published June 6, 1996, at page 135, and the references cited therein.

Y-2 Receptor
As with the Y-1 receptor, this receptor subtype was first delineated using vascular preparations. Pharmacologically, the Y-2 receptor is distinguished from Y-1 by exhibiting affinity for C-terminal fragments of neuropeptide Y. The receptor is most often differentiated by the use of neuropeptide Y(13-36), though the 3-36 fragment of neuropeptide Y and peptide YY provides improved affinity and selectivity. Y. Dumont, et al., Society for Neuroscience Abstracts, 19:726 (1993). Like Y-1 receptor, this receptor is coupled to the inhibition of adenylate cyclase, though in some preparations it may not be sensitive to pertussis toxin. The Y-2 receptor was found to reduce the intracellular levels of calcium in the synapse by selective inhibition of N-type calcium channels. Like the Y-1 receptor, the Y-2 receptor may exhibit differential coupling to second messengers. The Y2 receptor is believed to be involved in modulating hypertension, epileptic seizure, and neurogenic vascular hypertrophy. PCT Patent Publication WO 96/16542, published June 6, 1996, at page 135, and the references cited therein.

The Y-2 receptors are found in a variety of brain regions, including the hippocampus, substantia nigra-lateralis, thalamus, hypothalamus, and brainstem. In the periphery, Y-2 is found in the peripheral nervous system, such as sympathetic, parasympathetic, and sensory neurons. In all these tissues, Y-2 receptors mediate a decrease in the release of neurotransmitters. The Y-2 receptor has been cloned using expression cloning techniques. P.M. Rose, et al., Journal of Biological Chemistry, 270:22661 (1995); C. Gerald, et al., Journal of Biological Chemistry, 270:26758 (1995); D.R. Gehlert, et al., Molecular Pharmacology, 49:224 (1996).

**Y-3 Receptor**

This receptor has high affinity for neuropeptide Y while having lower affinity for peptide YY. While neuropeptide Y is a fully efficacious agonist at this receptor population, peptide YY is weakly efficacious. This pharmacological property is used to define this receptor. A receptor that has similar pharmacology to the Y-3 receptor has been identified in the CA3 region of the hippocampus using electrophysiological techniques. This receptor may potentiate the excitatory response of these neurons to N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA).

The presence of this receptor is best established in the rat brainstem, specifically in the nucleus tractus solitarius. Application of neuropeptide Y to this region produces a dose-dependent reduction in blood pressure and heart rate. This area of the brain also may have significant contributions from the Y-1 and Y-2 receptor. Neuropeptide Y also inhibits the acetylcholine-induced release of catecholamines from the adrenal medulla, presumably through a Y-3 receptor. C. Wahlestedt, et al., *Life Sciences*, 50:PL7-PL14 (1992).

**Peptide YY Preferring Receptor**

A fourth receptor has been described that exhibits a modest preference for peptide YY over neuropeptide Y. This receptor was first described in the rat small intestine as having a 5-10 fold higher affinity for peptide YY over neuropeptide Y. M. Laburthe, et al., *Endocrinology*, 118:1910-1917 (1986). Subsequently, this receptor was found in the adipocyte and a kidney proximal tubule cell line. This receptor is coupled in an inhibitory manner to adenylate cyclase and is sensitive to pertussis toxin.

In the intestine, this receptor produces a potent inhibition of fluid and electrolyte secretion. The receptor is localized to the crypt cells where intestinal chloride secretion is believed to take place. The peptide YY preferring receptor in adipocytes mediates a reduction in lipolysis by way of a cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP)-dependent mechanism.

**"Feeding Receptor"**

One of the earliest discovered central effects of neuropeptide Y was a profound increase in food intake that was observed following the hypothalamic administration of the peptide to rats. The response was greatest when the peptide was infused into the perifornical region of the hypothalamus. B.G. Stanley, et al., *Brain Research*, 604:304-317 (1993). While the pharmacology of this response resembled the Y-1 receptor, the
2-36 fragment of neuropeptide Y was significantly more potent than neuropeptide Y. In addition, intracerebroventricular neuropeptide Y(2-36) fully stimulates feeding, but does not reduce body temperature as does full length neuropeptide Y. F.B. Jolicoeur, et al., Brain Research Bulletin, 26:309-311 (1991). Two recent patent publications describe the cloning and expression of the Y5 receptor, believed to be the "feeding receptor". Patent Cooperation Treaty Publication WO 96/16542, published June 6, 1996; and Australian Patent Publication AU 956467 A0, published November 30, 1995.

The biological activity of the compounds of the present invention was evaluated employing an initial screening assay which rapidly and accurately measured the binding of the tested compound to known neuropeptide Y receptor sites. Assays useful for evaluating neuropeptide Y receptor antagonists are well known in the art. See, e.g., United States Patents 5,284,839, issued February 8, 1994, which is herein incorporated by reference. See also, M.W. Walker, et al., Journal of Neurosciences, 8:2438-2446 (1988).

Neuropeptide Y Binding Assay

The ability of the compounds of the instant invention were assessed as to their ability to bind to neuropeptide Y using a protocol essentially as described in M.W. Walker, et al., supra. In this assay the cell line SK-N-MC was employed. This cell line was received from Sloane-Kettering Memorial Hospital, New York. These cells were cultured in T-150 flasks using Dulbecco's Minimal Essential Media (DMEM) supplemented with 5% fetal calf serum. The cells were manually removed from the flasks by scraping, pelleted, and stored at -70°C.

The pellets were resuspended using a glass homogenizer in 25 mM HEPES (pH 7.4) buffer containing 2.5 mM calcium chloride, 1 mM magnesium chloride, and 2 g/L bacitracin. Incubations were performed in a final volume of 200 μL containing 0.1 nM 125I-peptide YY (2200 Ci/mmol) and 0.2-0.4 mg protein for about two hours at room temperature.
Nonspecific binding was defined as the amount of radioactivity remaining bound to the tissue after incubating in the presence of 1 μM neuropeptide Y. In some experiments various concentrations of compounds were included in the incubation mixture. Incubations were terminated by rapid filtration through glass fiber filters which had been presoaked in 0.3% polyethyleneimine using a 96-well harvester. The filters were washed with 5 ml of 50 mM Tris (pH 7.4) at 4°C and rapidly dried at 60°C. The filters were then treated with melt-on scintillation sheets and the radioactivity retained on the filters were counted. The results were analyzed using various software packages. Protein concentrations were measured using standard coomassie protein assay reagents using bovine serum albumin as standards.

Many of the compounds prepared supra showed significant activity as neuropeptide Y receptor antagonists (Kᵢ = 10 μM to 0.1 nM). As the compounds of Formula I are effective neuropeptide Y receptor antagonists, these compounds are of value in the treatment of a wide variety of clinical conditions which are characterized by the presence of an excess of neuropeptide Y. Thus, the invention provides methods for the treatment or prevention of a physiological disorder associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y, which method comprises administering to a mammal in need of said treatment an effective amount of a compound of Formula I or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug thereof. The term “physiological disorder associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y” encompasses those disorders associated with an inappropriate stimulation of neuropeptide Y receptors, regardless of the actual amount of neuropeptide Y present in the locale.

These physiological disorders include: disorders or diseases pertaining to the heart, blood vessels or the renal system, such as vasospasm, heart failure, shock, cardiac hypertrophy, increased blood pressure, angina, myocardial infarction, sudden cardiac death, congestive heart failure, arrhythmia, peripheral vascular disease, and abnormal renal conditions such as impaired flow of fluid, abnormal mass transport, or renal failure;
conditions related to increased sympathetic nerve activity for example, during or after coronary artery surgery, and operations and surgery in the gastrointestinal tract;
cerebral diseases and diseases related to the central nervous system, such as cerebral infarction, neurodegeneration, epilepsy, stroke, and conditions related to stroke, cerebral vasospasm and hemorrhage, depression, anxiety, schizophrenia, dementia, seizure, and epilepsy;
conditions related to pain or nociception;
diseases related to abnormal gastrointestinal motility and secretion, such as different forms of ileus, urinary incontinence, and Crohn’s disease;
abnormal drink and food intake disorders, such as obesity, anorexia, bulimia, and metabolic disorders;
diseases related to sexual dysfunction and reproductive disorders;
conditions or disorders associated with inflammation;
respiratory diseases, such as asthma and conditions related to asthma and bronchoconstriction; and
diseases related to abnormal hormone release, such as leutinizing hormone, growth hormone, insulin, and prolactin.

The compounds of Formula I are usually administered in the form of pharmaceutical compositions. These compounds can be administered by a variety of routes including oral, rectal, transdermal, subcutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, and intranasal. These compounds are effective as both injectable and oral compositions. Such compositions are prepared in a manner well known in the pharmaceutical art and comprise at least one active compound.

The present invention also includes methods employing pharmaceutical compositions which contain, as the active ingredient, a compound of Formula I associated with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. In making the compositions of the present invention the active ingredient is usually mixed with an excipient, diluted by an excipient or enclosed within such a carrier which can be in the form of a capsule, sachet, paper or other container. When the excipient serves as a
diluent, it can be a solid, semi-solid, or liquid material, which acts as a vehicle, carrier or medium for the active ingredient. Thus, the compositions can be in the form of tablets, pills, powders, lozenges, sachets, cachets, elixirs, suspensions, emulsions, solutions, syrups, aerosols (as a solid or in a liquid medium), ointments containing for example up to 10% by weight of the active compound, soft and hard gelatin capsules, suppositories, sterile injectable solutions, and sterile packaged powders.

In preparing a formulation, it may be necessary to mill the active compound to provide the appropriate particle size prior to combining with the other ingredients. If the active compound is substantially insoluble, it ordinarily is milled to a particle size of less than 200 mesh. If the active compound is substantially water soluble, the particle size is normally adjusted by milling to provide a substantially uniform distribution in the formulation, e.g. about 40 mesh.

Some examples of suitable excipients include lactose, dextrose, sucrose, sorbitol, mannitol, starches, gum acacia, calcium phosphate, alginates, tragacanth, gelatin, calcium silicate, microcrystalline cellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, cellulose, water, syrup, and methyl cellulose. The formulations can additionally include: lubricating agents such as talc, magnesium stearate, and mineral oil; wetting agents; emulsifying and suspending agents; preserving agents such as methyl- and propylhydroxybenzoates; sweetening agents; and flavoring agents. The compositions of the invention can be formulated so as to provide quick, sustained or delayed release of the active ingredient after administration to the patient by employing procedures known in the art.

The compositions are preferably formulated in a unit dosage form, each dosage containing from about 5 to about 100 mg, more usually about 10 to about 30 mg, of the active ingredient. The term "unit dosage form" refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages dosages for human subjects and other mammals, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active material calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect, in association with a suitable pharmaceutical excipient.
The active compound is effective over a wide dosage range. For examples, dosages per day normally fall within the range of about 0.5 to about 30 mg/kg of body weight. In the treatment of adult humans, the range of about 1 to about 15 mg/kg/day, in single or divided dose, is especially preferred. However, it will be understood that the amount of the compound actually administered will be determined by a physician, in the light of the relevant circumstances, including the condition to be treated, the chosen route of administration, the actual compound administered, the age, weight, and response of the individual patient, and the severity of the patient's symptoms, and therefore the above dosage ranges are not intended to limit the scope of the invention in any way. In some instances dosage levels below the lower limit of the aforesaid range may be more than adequate, while in other cases still larger doses may be employed without causing any harmful side effect, provided that such larger doses are first divided into several smaller doses for administration throughout the day.

For preparing solid compositions such as tablets the principal active ingredient is mixed with a pharmaceutical excipient to form a solid preformulation composition containing a homogeneous mixture of a compound of the present invention. When referring to these preformulation compositions as homogeneous, it is meant that the active ingredient is dispersed evenly throughout the composition so that the composition may be readily subdivided into equally effective unit dosage forms such as tablets, pills and capsules. This solid preformulation is then subdivided into unit dosage forms of the type described above containing from 0.1 to about 500 mg of the active ingredient of the present invention.

The tablets or pills of the present invention may be coated or otherwise compounded to provide a dosage form affording the advantage of prolonged action. For example, the tablet or pill can comprise an inner dosage and an outer dosage component, the latter being in the form of an envelope over the former. The two components can be separated by enteric layer which serves to resist disintegration in the stomach and permit the inner component to pass intact into the duodenum or to be delayed in release. A variety of materials can be used for such enteric layers or coatings, such materials including a number
of polymeric acids and mixtures of polymeric acids with such materials as shellac, cetyl alcohol, and cellulose acetate.

The liquid forms in which the novel compositions of the present invention may be incorporated for administration orally or by injection include aqueous solutions, suitably flavored syrups, aqueous or oil suspensions, and flavored emulsions with edible oils such as cottonseed oil, sesame oil, coconut oil, or peanut oil, as well as elixirs and similar pharmaceutical vehicles.

Compositions for inhalation or insufflation include solutions and suspensions in pharmaceutically acceptable, aqueous or organic solvents, or mixtures thereof, and powders. The liquid or solid compositions may contain suitable pharmaceutically acceptable excipients as described supra. Preferably the compositions are administered by the oral or nasal respiratory route for local or systemic effect. Compositions in preferably pharmaceutically acceptable solvents may be nebulized by use of inert gases. Nebulized solutions may be breathed directly from the nebulizing device or the nebulizing device may be attached to a face mask, tent, or intermittent positive pressure breathing machine. Solution, suspension, or powder compositions may be administered, preferably orally or nasally, from devices which deliver the formulation in an appropriate manner.

The following examples illustrate the pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention.
Formulation Preparation 1

Hard gelatin capsules containing the following ingredients are prepared:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity (mg/capsule)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starch</td>
<td>305.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium stearate</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above ingredients are mixed and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 340 mg quantities.

Formulation Preparation 2

A tablet formula is prepared using the ingredients below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity (mg/tablet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>25.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellulose, microcrystalline</td>
<td>200.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colloidal silicon dioxide</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stearic acid</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The components are blended and compressed to form tablets, each weighing 240 mg.
Formulation Preparation 3

A dry powder inhaler formulation is prepared containing the following components:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Weight %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactose</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The active mixture is mixed with the lactose and the mixture is added to a dry powder inhaling appliance.

Formulation Preparation 4

Tablets, each containing 30 mg of active ingredient, are prepared as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity (mg/tablet)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>30.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starch</td>
<td>45.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microcrystalline cellulose</td>
<td>35.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinylpyrrolidone</td>
<td>4.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(as 10% solution in water)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium carboxymethyl starch</td>
<td>4.5 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium stearate</td>
<td>0.5 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talc</td>
<td>1.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>120 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The active ingredient, starch and cellulose are passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve and mixed thoroughly. The solution of polyvinylpyrrolidone is mixed with the resultant powders, which are then passed through a 16 mesh U.S. sieve. The granules so produced are dried at 50-60°C and passed through a 16 mesh U.S. sieve. The sodium carboxymethyl starch, magnesium stearate, and talc, previously passed through a No. 30 mesh U.S. sieve, are then added to the granules which, after mixing, are compressed on a tablet machine to yield tablets each weighing 120 mg.

### Formulation Preparation 5

Capsules, each containing 40 mg of medicament are made as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity (mg/capsule)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>40.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starch</td>
<td>109.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium stearate</td>
<td>1.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>150.0 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 150 mg quantities.
Formulation Preparation 6

Suppositories, each containing 25 mg of active ingredient are made as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>25 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturated fatty acid glycerides to</td>
<td>2,000 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The active ingredient is passed through a No. 60 mesh U.S. sieve and suspended in the saturated fatty acid glycerides previously melted using the minimum heat necessary. The mixture is then poured into a suppository mold of nominal 2.0 g capacity and allowed to cool.

Formulation Preparation 7

Suspensions, each containing 50 mg of medicament per 5.0 ml dose are made as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>50.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xanthan gum</td>
<td>4.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium carboxymethyl cellulose (11%)</td>
<td>50.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microcrystalline cellulose (89%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sucrose</td>
<td>1.75 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium benzoate</td>
<td>10.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flavor and Color</td>
<td>q.v.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purified water to</td>
<td>5.0 ml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The medicament, sucrose and xanthan gum are blended, passed through a No. 10 mesh U.S. sieve, and then mixed with a previously made solution of the microcrystalline cellulose and sodium carboxymethyl cellulose in water. The sodium benzoate, flavor, and color are diluted with some of the water and added with stirring. Sufficient water is then added to produce the required volume.

**Formulation Preparation 8**

Capsules, each containing 15 mg of medicament, are made as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity (mg/capsule)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>15.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starch</td>
<td>407.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium stearate</td>
<td>3.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>425.0 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 425 mg quantities.
Formulation Preparation 9

An intravenous formulation may be prepared as follows:

5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>250.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isotonic saline</td>
<td>1000 ml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Formulation Preparation 10

A topical formulation may be prepared as follows:

15

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient</td>
<td>1-10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emulsifying Wax</td>
<td>30 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid Paraffin</td>
<td>20 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Soft Paraffin</td>
<td>to 100 g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The white soft paraffin is heated until molten. The liquid paraffin and emulsifying wax are incorporated and stirred until dissolved. The active ingredient is added and stirring is continued until dispersed. The mixture is then cooled until solid.
- 298 -

**Formulation Preparation 11**

Sublingual or buccal tablets, each containing 10 mg of active ingredient, may be prepared as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ingredient</th>
<th>Quantity Per Tablet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Ingredient(s)</td>
<td>10.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycerol</td>
<td>210.5 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>143.0 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Citrate</td>
<td>4.5 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinyl Alcohol</td>
<td>26.5 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyvinylpyrrolidone</td>
<td>15.5 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>410.0 mg</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The glycerol, water, sodium citrate, polyvinyl alcohol, and polyvinylpyrrolidone are admixed together by continuous stirring and maintaining the temperature at about 90°C. When the polymers have gone into solution, the solution is cooled to about 50-55°C and the medicament is slowly admixed. The homogenous mixture is poured into forms made of an inert material to produce a drug-containing diffusion matrix having a thickness of about 2-4 mm. This diffusion matrix is then cut to form individual tablets having the appropriate size.

Another preferred formulation employed in the methods of the present invention employs transdermal delivery devices ("patches"). Such transdermal patches may be used to provide continuous or discontinuous infusion of the compounds of the present invention in controlled amounts. The construction and use of transdermal patches for the delivery of pharmaceutical agents is well known in the art. See, e.g., U.S. Patent 5,023,252, issued June 11, 1991, herein incorporated by
reference. Such patches may be constructed for continuous, pulsatile, or on demand delivery of pharmaceutical agents.

Frequently, it will be desirable or necessary to introduce the pharmaceutical composition to the brain, either directly or indirectly. Direct techniques usually involve placement of a drug delivery catheter into the host's ventricular system to bypass the blood-brain barrier. One such implantable delivery system, used for the transport of biological factors to specific anatomical regions of the body, is described in U.S. Patent 5,011,472, issued April 30, 1991, which is herein incorporated by reference.

Indirect techniques, which are generally preferred, usually involve formulating the compositions to provide for drug latentiation by the conversion of hydrophilic drugs into lipid-soluble drugs or prodrugs. Latentiation is generally achieved through blocking of the hydroxy, carbonyl, sulfate, and primary amine groups present on the drug to render the drug more lipid soluble and amenable to transportation across the blood-brain barrier. Alternatively, the delivery of hydrophilic drugs may be enhanced by intra-arterial infusion of hypertonic solutions which can transiently open the blood-brain barrier.
We Claim:

1. A compound of the formula

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{D-(CH}_2\text{)}_q \text{C}_n \text{R}^2 \\
\text{(CH}_2\text{)}_r \text{A}_1 \text{A}^1 \\
\text{R}^1 \text{N} \text{A} \\
\text{R}^b \\
\text{R}^1 \text{R}^a \\
\end{align*}
\]

wherein:

- \( \text{R}^b \) is hydrogen, \( \text{C}_1\text{-C}_6 \) alkyl, \( \text{C}_1\text{-C}_6 \) alkoxy, \( \text{C}_2\text{-C}_6 \) alkanoyl, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, or halo;

- \( \text{R}^1 \) is hydrogen, \( \text{C}_1\text{-C}_6 \) alkyl, or \( -(\text{CH}_2)_v \text{-R}^{1a} \);

where \( v \) is 1 to 12, and \( \text{R}^{1a} \) is phenyl, naphthyl, hexamethylenimine, piperazinyl, heptamethylenimine, imidazolinyl, piperidinyl, tryptolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl, any one of which phenyl, naphthyl, hexamethylenimine, piperazinyl, heptamethylenimine, imidazolinyl, piperidinyl, tryptolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl groups may be substituted with one or more moieties selected from the groups consisting of \( \text{C}_1\text{-C}_6 \) alkyl, halo, trifluoromethyl, benzyl, phenyl, di(\( \text{C}_1\text{-C}_6 \) alkyl)amino, \( \text{C}_1\text{-C}_6 \) alkylamino, \( \text{C}_2\text{-C}_6 \) alkanoyl, \( \text{C}_2\text{-C}_6 \) alkanoyloxy, and \( \text{C}_3\text{-C}_8 \) cycloalkyl,
three moieties independently selected from the group consisting of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halo, or C₁-C₆ alkoxy,

or R¹a may be substituted with -(CH₂)ₜw-R¹b, where w is 1 to 12 and R¹b is piperidinyl, pyrimidyl, pyrrolidinyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ alkylthio, di(di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino, di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino, phenyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, pyrrolidinyl, and acetamido,

said phenyl, or C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, being optionally substituted with one, two, or three moieties independently selected from the group consisting of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halo, or C₁-C₆ alkoxy;

A is a bond, -(CH₂)ₘ or -C(O)-;

A¹ is a bond, -NRᵃ⁻, -O⁻, -(CH₂)ₘ⁻, or -S(O)ₙ⁻;

q is 0 to 6;

p is 0 to 6;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

m is 0 to 6;

s is 0 to 6;

Rᵃ is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, or C₂-C₆ alkanoyl;

D is a bond, C₂-C₄ alkenylenyl, or -C(X)(Y)-,
where one of \(X\) and \(Y\) is hydroxy and the other is hydrogen, or both \(X\) and \(Y\) are hydrogen, or \(X\) and \(Y\) combine to form \(=O\), or \(=\text{NOR}^c\);

\[
R^c \text{ is hydrogen, benzyl, acetyl, benzoyl, or } C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl;}
\]

one of \(X^1\) and \(Y^1\) is hydroxy and the other is hydrogen, or both \(X^1\) and \(Y^1\) are hydrogen, or \(X^1\) and \(Y^1\) combine to form \(=O\), or \(=\text{NOR}^d\);

\[
R^d \text{ is hydrogen or } C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl;}
\]

\[
R^2 \text{ is hydroxy, } C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl, } C_1-C_6 \text{ alkoxy, phenoxy, or a group of the formula}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
R^4 \\
\hline
N \\
R^5
\end{array}
\]

wherein \(R^4\) and \(R^5\) are independently hydrogen, \(C_1-C_6\) alkyl, phenyl, or phenyl(\(C_1-C_6\) alkenyl)-, or \(R^2\) is a heterocyclic ring selected from the group consisting of hexamethyleniminy1, piperazinyl, heptamethyleniminy1, imidazolinyl, piperidinyl, 2-tryptolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl;

any one of which hexamethyleniminy1, piperazinyl, heptamethyleniminy1, imidazolinyl, piperidinyl, 2-tryptolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl groups may be substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of \(C_1-C_6\) alkyl, halo, trifluoromethyl, benzyl, phenyl, di(\(C_1-C_6\) alkyl)amino, di(\(C_1-C_6\) alkyl)amino(\(C_1-C_6\) alkenyl)-, \(C_1-C_6\) alkylamino(\(C_1-C_6\) alkenyl)-, \(C_2-C_6\)
alkanoyl, carboxamido, 2-aminoacetyl, C₂-C₆
alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₆ alkoxy carbonyl-, C₁-C₆
alkylamino, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, piperidinyl,
pyrrolidinyl, pyrimidyl, phenyl(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-,
phenoxy(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-, piperidinyl(C₁-C₆
alkenyl)-, pyrrolidinyl(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-,
pyrimidyl(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆
alkylthio, di(di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino(C₁-C₆
alkenyl)]amino, di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino(C₁-C₆
alkenyl)amino, and acetamido,

any one of which benzyl, phenyl, piperidinyl,
C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, phenyl(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-,
phenoxy(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-, pyrrolidinyl,
piperidinyl(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-, pyrrolidinyl(C₁-
C₆ alkenyl)-, pyrimidyl(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-, or
pyrimidyl group may be substituted with one or
more moieties selected from the group
consisting of C₁-C₆ alkyl, halo, trifluoromethyl,
acetamido, C₂-C₆ alkanoyl, C₂-C₇ alkanoyloxy,
and C₁-C₆ alkoxy, or the nitrogen on said
piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl(C₁-C₆
alkenyl)-, pyrrolidinyl(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-,
pyrimidyl(C₁-C₆ alkenyl)-, or pyrimidyl may
be substituted with an amino-protecting group,
or R² is a group of the formula

\[
\begin{align*}
N & \quad R^{6a} \\
\downarrow & \\
R^{5a} & \quad R^{4a}
\end{align*}
\]

where R⁴a, R⁵a, and R⁶a are independently hydrogen,
C₁-C₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl, or C₁-C₆ alkoxy,
or R⁴a is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, trifluoromethyl, or C₁-C₆ alkoxy and R⁵a and R⁶a combine to form,

together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, hexamethyleniminy1, or heptamethyleniminyl,

or R⁴a is oxygen, and R⁵a and R⁶a combine to form,

together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, hexamethyleniminy1, or heptamethyleniminy1;

R is phenyl, naphthyl, dihydronaphthyl,
tetrahydronaphthyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, pyrazinyl, allyl,
thiazolyl, furyl, pyrimidyl, pyridinyl, quinoliny1,
isoquinoliny1, oxazolyl, pyridazinyl, imidazolyl, triazolyl,
tetrazolyl, hexamethyleniminy1, heptamethyleniminy1,
piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, or morpholinyl,

any one of which phenyl, naphthyl, dihydronaphthyl,
tetrahydronaphthyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, pyrazinyl,
thiazolyl, furyl, pyrimidyl, pyridinyl, quinoliny1,
isoquinoliny1, oxazolyl, pyridazinyl, imidazolyl,
triazolyl, tetrazolyl, hexamethyleniminy1,
heptamethyleniminy1, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl,
quiuclidinyl, or morpholiny1 groups may be
substituted with one or more moieties selected from
the group consisting of C₁-C₁₂ alkyl, C₂-C₁₀ alkenyl,
C₂-C₁₀ alkynyl, halo, trifluoromethyl, carboxamido,
cyano, benzyl, phenyl, di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino, C₂-C₆
alcanoyl, C₂-C₆ alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₆ alkylamino,
oxazolyl, dihydrooxazolyl, piperidinyl(C₁-C₁₂ alkoxy)-,
piperidinyl(C₁-C₁₂ alkoxy)(C₁-C₆ alkylidencyl)-,
piperidinyl(C₁-C₁₂ alkylenyl)-(phenyl(C₁-C₁₂ alkoxy)-,
phenyl(C₂-C₁₂ alkylenyl)-(C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl,
piperidinyl, pyrimidyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ alkythio,
a group of the formula R^xR^yN-G-L-(C_0-C_6 alkylenyl)-, and acetamido,

where R^x and R^y are independently hydrogen, C_1-C_6 alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, hexamethyleneiminy1, heptamethyleneiminy1, morpholiny1, piperaziny1, or C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl,

or where R^xR^yN is a ring selected from the group consisting of piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, hexamethyleneiminy1, heptamethyleneiminy1, azetidiny1, which may be attached to G at any appropriate place on the ring,

G is C_1-C_{12} alkylenyl, C_2-C_{12} alkenylenyl, or C_2-C_{12} alkynylenyl, and

L is a bond, -O-, -S-, -S(O)-, -S(O)_2-, or -NH-;

with the proviso that when A^1 is -NR^a-, -O-, or -S(O)_n-, and A is -CH_2-, R^1 is not hydrogen;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

2. A compound as claimed in Claim 1 wherein R^1 is hydrogen, or methyl or R^{1a} is piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperazinyl, or quinuclidinyl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

3. A compound as claimed in Claim 2 wherein R^{1a} is piperidin-3-yl, piperidin-2-yl, pyrrolidin-3-yl, or pyrrolidin-2-yl, piperidin-1-yl, piperidin-4-yl, pyrrolidin-1-yl, or pyrrolidin-4-yl, phenyl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

4. A compound as claimed in Claim 3 wherein A^1 is a bond or -O-, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.
5. A compound as claimed in Claim 4 wherein -(CH₂)₉⁻D-(CH₂)₉⁺ is a bond, methylene, ethylene, or -C(O)-, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

6. A compound as claimed in Claim 5 wherein both X¹ and Y¹ are hydrogen, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

7. A compound as claimed in Claim 6 wherein R² is a piperidiny1 group substituted with amino, di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino, C₁-C₆ alkylamino, or piperidinyl, or R² is a pyrrolidinyl group substituted with amino, di(C₁-C₆ alkyl)amino, C₁-C₆ alkylamino, or pyrrolidinyl, or R² is a piperazinyl group substituted with phenyl or cyclohexyl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

8. A compound as claimed in Claim 7 wherein -A₁-A⁻(CH₂)ₙ⁻ is -CH₂-O-, -CH₂-NH-, or -CH₂-S-, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

9. A compound as claimed in Claim 8 wherein R is naphthyl, phenyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, or cyclohexyl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

10. A compound as claimed in Claim 9 wherein R is phenyl optionally independently substituted at the 4-position and at the 2-position with halo, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof.

11. A pharmaceutical formulation, comprising, as an active ingredient, a compound as claimed in any one of Claims 1 to 10, in combination with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, diluents, or excipients, therefor.
12. A compound as claimed in any one of Claims 1 to 10, for use in treating a condition associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y, or a related peptide.

13. A method of treating a condition associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y, which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof an effective amount of a compound as claimed in any one of Claims 1 to 10.

14. The use of a compound as claimed in any one of Claims 1 to 10, for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a condition associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y.

15. A pharmaceutical formulation adapted for the treatment of a condition associated with an excess of neuropeptide Y, comprising a compound as claimed in any one of Claims 1 to 10.
**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**
- IPC(6) : C07D 209/04; A61K 31/34
- US CL : 514/183, 410, 415; 548/465, 469, 517
- According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**
- U.S. : 514/183, 410, 415; 548/465, 469, 517;
- Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched
- Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages</th>
<th>Relevant to claim No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y, P</td>
<td>US, A, 5,496,844 (INAI ET AL.) 05 March 1996, see entire document.</td>
<td>1-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X, Y</td>
<td>US, A, 5,206,382 (COSTA ET AL.) 27 April 1993, see entire document.</td>
<td>1-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>US, A, 5,264,420 (DUGGAN ET AL.) 23 November 1993, see entire document.</td>
<td>1-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>US, A, 4,374,846 (HEINEMANN ET AL.) 22 February 1983, see entire document.</td>
<td>1-15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.
- See patent family annex.

**Date of the actual completion of the international search**

26 DECEMBER 1996

**Date of mailing of the international search report**

21 JAN 1997

**Name and mailing address of the ISA/US**

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

**Facsimile No.** (703) 305-3230

**Authorized officer**

P.K. SRIPADA
aco

**Telephone No.** (703) 308-1235

* Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet)(July 1992)*